



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

KD

61447

NEEL TRANSFER



HN 22BR ₩

KD 61447

Walter Lichtenstein
with compliments of

J. Tucker Burr
Boston

Feb. 1914

Peru, en route
Cuzco to Puno

April 2, '14

A BRIEF GRAMMAR
OF THE
PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE
WITH
EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

BY
JOHN C. BRANNER, PH.D., LL.D.

*Vice-President and Professor of Geology
Leland Stanford Jr. University
Sometime Geologist of the Comissão Geologica do Brazil
and of the Serviço Geologico do Brazil*



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
1910

115 61447



COPYRIGHT, 1910,
BY
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

TO
RICHARD CUTTS SHANNON

PREFACE

THIS little book has been prepared for the use of English-speaking students who wish to get a practical knowledge of the Portuguese language. The plan of Professor Edgren's *Brief Spanish Grammar* has been followed, in many respects almost literally. Many Portuguese grammars have been consulted, but the ones most freely drawn from are the thirteenth edition of João Ribeiro's *Grammatica Portuguesa*, published at Rio de Janeiro in 1907, and the twenty-sixth edition of the *Nova Grammatica Portuguesa* by Bento José de Oliveira, published at Coimbra in 1904.

It is not claimed that there is much that is new or original in the work. The author has simply endeavored to follow the best Portuguese grammarians, and his own observations and experience with the language, in an effort to make it readily accessible to English-speaking students and in as compact a form as possible. It has been kept in mind that such a work, in order to be useful, must keep practical points in view even at the expense of the erudite and more scholarly features of the language. The book is purely elementary; those who require a thorough knowledge of the philologic and

philosophic features of the tongue should consult the more pretentious works.

Near the end of the volume a few short examples are quoted from several of the best Portuguese authors. These examples are taken partly from Brazilian and partly from Portuguese writers.

It may be well to say here that the idea one often hears expressed to the effect that the Portuguese of Brazil is not good Portuguese is altogether erroneous. It is true that one hears purely local terms and expressions in various parts of Brazil,¹ but so he does in Portugal and, for that matter, in all languages and in every other part of the world. The language used by the educated Brazilians is just as correct in the main as that used by the educated Portuguese. The difference between the Portuguese spoken in Brazil and that spoken in Portugal is similar to the difference between the English of North America and the English of England — one about which the foreigner need not seriously concern himself.

Portuguese is a remarkably phonetic language, and one accustomed to the difficulties of the English, or even of the French, must be impressed with the comparative simplicity of its spelling. Examples of the chief orthographic difficulties are given at paragraph 13, pages 21–22. Those who are interested

¹ As an example see "Collecção de vocabulos e frases usados na Provincia de S. Pedro do Rio Grande do Sul" por Antonio Alvares Pereira Coruja. *Revista do Instituto Historico e Geographico do Brazil*, XV, 210–240. Rio de Janeiro, 1852.

in this subject should consult the scholarly work of A. R. Gonçalves Viana entitled *Ortografia Nacional*, published at Lisbon in 1904. Of late years there has been some agitation in favor of orthographic reform, and the Brazilian Academy promulgated in 1907 certain rules which, if followed, would still further tend to simplify spelling. These rules, however, do not appear to have been taken seriously as yet. The Brazilian scholar who has given most careful and most practical attention to this matter of Portuguese spelling is Professor M. Said Ali, of Rio de Janeiro. He has published a *Vocabulario orthographico* in which rules for greater simplicity are laid down, and the words about which there is any question are all given. The spelling given by Professor Said Ali has been followed in the present work. In cases where two spellings have been or are used, cross-references are made in the vocabulary.

The chief object of this book is to encourage and facilitate the study of the Portuguese language and literature by English-speaking people. It is not a little remarkable that the language has not been cultivated more by English and American scholars.¹ It is generally regarded as the most Latin of all the Latin tongues, and it certainly is a virile one, and

¹ Sir Richard Burton makes this comprehensive remark about the popular Anglo-Saxon idea of the Portuguese: "As a rule we dislike the language because it is nasal, and we have a deep-rooted and most ignorant idea that Portuguese, the most Latin of all the neo-Latin tongues, is a 'bastard dialect of Spanish.'" (Burton's *Highlands of Brazil*, I, 15.)

has a "classic solemnity that distinguishes it from all other living languages."¹ In addition, the literary, historical, and philological treasures of the Portuguese commend it to the thoughtful attention of scholars the world over, while the increasing commercial importance of Portuguese-speaking nations entitle it to respectful consideration and study for commercial, political, and diplomatic reasons.

For many corrections and valuable suggestions the author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness to the able Brazilian historian, Capistrano de Abreu, and to the distinguished grammarian, Professor Said Ali, who have kindly read the manuscript. For any errors, oversights, or other shortcomings of the work, however, these gentlemen are in no way responsible.

J. C. BRANNER.

STANFORD UNIVERSITY, CALIFORNIA.

¹ Almeida Garrett. *Obras Completas*, XXI, 7.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	V
THE PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE	1
I. SOUNDS AND ACCENTS	4
Alphabet	4
Pronunciation	5
Vowels	5
Diphthongs	6
Nasal sounds	7
Consonants	7
Dialectical	11
Accent marks	12
Tone accent	13
Quantity	19
Syllabication	19
Capital letters	20
Orthography	21
II. ARTICLES	23
Definite article	23
Contractions	23
Syntax	24
Indefinite article	25
Syntax	26
III. NOUNS	26
Inflection	26
Plural formation	27
Plurals only	28
Compound words	28
Varied meanings	29
Gender	30

	PAGE
Masculine	30
Feminine	31
Common terminations	32
Nouns of opposite sexes	34
Related	35
Unrelated	35
Identical	35
Closely similar related nouns	35
Similar unrelated nouns	37
Qualifying suffixes	38
Augmentatives	41
Diminutives	41
IV. ADJECTIVES	43
Plural	43
Feminine	43
Comparison	44
Irregular comparisons	47
Augmentatives and diminutives	47
Syntax of nouns and adjectives	48
V. NUMERALS	50
Cardinals	50
Ordinals	51
The fractions	52
Multiplication	53
Numeral substantives	54
Idioms with the numerals	54
VI. PRONOUNS	56
Personals	56
Use of the third person	57
Reflexive	58
Duplication	58
Syntax of the personal pronoun	59
Possessives	61
Demonstratives	63
Determinatives	64
Interrogatives	65
Relatives	66
Indefinite	67

CONTENTS

xi

PAGE

VII. VERBS	69
Conjugations	69
Terminations of the regular verbs	70
Model verbs	72
Observations on the regular verbs	75
Auxiliary verbs	76
Conjugation of the auxiliary verbs	79
Irregular verbs	81
Reference list of irregular verbs	82
Variable participles of regular verbs	88
List of verbs having participles of two forms	89
Defective verbs	91
Subjects of verbs	91
Impersonal verbs	93
Prepositions required by verbs	94
Objects of verbs	96
Special uses of verbs	97
Periphrastic verb phrases	98
Reflexive verbs	99
Imperative and subjunctive	100
The subjunctive and the indicative	101
Personal infinitive	102
VIII. THE INDECLINABLES	103
Adverbs	103
Special cases	105
Negation	107
Double negative	107
Interrogation	108
Prepositions	108
Conjunctions	113
Interjections	114
Abbreviations	115
Similarity of words	117
IX. EXERCISES	119
Examples of style	157
Os Santos Evangelhos	157
Alexandre Herculano	159
Almeida Garrett	162

	PAGE
Joaquim Nabuco	163
Julia Lopes d'Almeida	165
Gonçalves Dias	169
Marquez de Maricá	170
Luis de Camões	173
VOCABULARIES	177
Portuguese-English Vocabulary	179
English-Portuguese Vocabulary	210

PORTUGUESE GRAMMAR

THE PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE

THE Portuguese language¹ was evolved principally from the popular Latin spoken in the Portuguese part of the Spanish peninsula after the Roman conquest in the second century before Christ. Only a few words of the former Celtic dialects spoken there were preserved in the later Portuguese. The subsequent Gothic invasion also introduced a few words of Germanic origin, while the religious life of the people led to the introduction of certain words of Greek origin.

In the eighth century the Moors invaded the Spanish peninsula, and for several hundred years occupied portions of that region. This long contact of the Moors with the inhabitants of Portugal naturally resulted in the introduction into the Portuguese language of a good many words of Semitic origin; most of these words have as a prefix the Arabian article *al*, such as *algodão*, *cotton*; *alfinete*, *pin*. It was during the long Gothic and Arabian occupancy that the Latin spoken in western Spain appears to have gradually taken on the form of a distinct language that was spoken the whole length of the region now known as Portugal.

¹ Condensed chiefly from the *Grammatica historica da lingua Portuguesa* por Antonio G. R. de Vasconcellos. Lisboa, 1900.

The oldest-known documents in the Portuguese language date from the last quarter of the twelfth century — about the time the Portuguese monarchy was founded. It was only in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, however, that it became a literary language, and took on permanent form.

A few words were introduced from the French and others from the Provençal, while translations from the Latin introduced many words and idioms from that language, partly, it is supposed, through the pedantry of the translators. The Spanish language, on account of its literary vogue, and on account of the proximity of its people and the similarity of the two tongues, necessarily reacted upon the Portuguese. This vogue was so marked that during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries many Portuguese authors wrote in Spanish. The explorations of the Portuguese navigators into the newly discovered parts of the world led to the importation of some foreign words, and, at the same time, carried colonists and established the language in Asia, Africa, and South America.

In the sixteenth century the first Portuguese grammars were published by Fernão de Oliveira and João de Barros, and these works materially helped to fix the language.

It is said that of the living languages of Latin origin the Portuguese most closely resembles the Latin. This is due to the fact that Portugal, on account of its geographic position, has not been

affected by contact with the rest of the world so much as Italy, France, and Spain.

In recent years, however, the increased facilities for international communication, the demands of commerce and the requirements of various enterprises and technical industries, and the spread of interest in certain sports have caused the introduction of words from various foreign tongues. In many cases the foreign words themselves have been adopted but in others the words have been more or less modified.

I. SOUNDS AND ACCENTS

ALPHABET

1. The Portuguese alphabet is the same as the English except that it contains no *w*.

Following are the Portuguese names of the letters together with their approximate pronunciations.

LETTERS	PORTUGUESE NAMES	PRONUNCIATIONS WITH ENGLISH VALUES
a	<i>a</i>	ah
b	<i>be</i>	bay (short) ¹
c	<i>ce</i>	say (short) ¹
d	<i>de</i>	day (short) ¹
e	<i>é</i>	ay (as <i>ea</i> in health)
f	<i>effe</i> or <i>fê</i>	éffe or fay
g	<i>ge</i> or <i>ji</i>	hjay (<i>hj</i> = French <i>j</i>) ¹
h	<i>agá</i>	agáh
i	<i>i</i>	ee
j	<i>jóta</i>	hjóta (<i>hj</i> = French <i>j</i>) or zh
k	<i>ka</i>	kah
l	<i>elle</i> or <i>lê</i>	élle ² or lay
m	<i>emme</i> or <i>mê</i>	émme ² or may
n	<i>enne</i> or <i>nê</i>	énne ² or nay
o	<i>ó</i>	o (as in nor)
p	<i>pe</i>	pay (short) ¹
q	<i>que</i>	kay (short) ¹

¹ In these words the *ay* is not drawn out; for example the *day* has the sound of *day* in Friday.

² These words take the tonic accent on the first syllable; the final *e* is short.

LETTERS	PORTUGUESE NAMES	PRONUNCIATIONS WITH ENGLISH VALUES
r	<i>erre</i> or <i>rê</i>	érre ¹ or ray
s	<i>esse</i> or <i>si</i>	ésse ² or see
t	<i>te</i>	tay (short) ¹
u	<i>u</i>	oo (as in poor)
v	<i>ve</i>	vay (short) ¹
x	<i>xiz</i> or <i>xê</i>	shiz or shay ¹
y	<i>ypsilon</i>	ypsilon
z	<i>ze</i>	zay (short) ¹

NOTE. — The letter **w** is only used in the foreign words in which it occurs. It is called *dobleú*, very much as in English.

PRONUNCIATION

2. Vowels. — For the most part the vowels are pronounced separately, so that each one forms a syllable. The only exceptions to this rule are the nasal diphthongs.

The sounds of the vowels are characterized as *long*, *short*, *open*, *close*, and *nasal*.

SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS

PHONETIC VALUES	APPROXIMATING THE ENGLISH	EXAMPLES
a {	long	<i>a</i> in farther
	short	<i>u</i> in but
	nasal	
		sofá
		boca, festa
		manso

The **a**-sounds differ in quantity rather than quality.

¹ In these words the **ay** is not drawn out; for example the **day** has the sound of *day* in Friday.

² These words take the tonic accent on the first syllable; the final **e** is short.

PHONETIC VALUES	APPROXIMATING THE ENGLISH	EXAMPLES
e {	open	café (so accented)
	close	sello (sometimes ac- cented, as mercê)
	short (or mute) ¹	caracter
	nasal	pente ²
i {	long	frío
	short	quási
	nasal	injusto
o {	open	pó (so accented)
	close	boa, avô (so accented)
	short (or mute) ³	locação, cravo
	nasal	pómpa
u {	long	perú
	short	tribu
	nasal	túmba
	(only shorter)	
	<i>oo</i> in room	

u is silent when preceded by **q** and followed by **e** or **i**: **aqui** (pr. **akee**).
y is pronounced **ee** as if it were **i** long; it is nasal when followed by
m, as **tympano**. **Y** is much used in Brazil in words of Tupy
origin, as **Ivahy**, **Apody**.

3. Diphthongs. — It is customary to regard as pure diphthongs such vowel combinations as **ae** in **pae**, **ai** in **vai**, **au** in **pau**, **ei** in **lei**, **eo** in **deo**, **eu** in **breu**, **oe** in **heroe**, **iu** in **viu**, **oi** in **boi**, **ui** in **fui**. It

¹ Unaccented **e** at the beginning or end of a word and before **s** and **a** has the phonetic value of **i** short: **brève** = **brevi**; **estíma** = **istíma**; **igual** = **igual**; **veído** = **viádo**; **leão** = **lião**.

² The **e** is nasal when followed by **n**, as in **desenho**, **tenha**, **bens**; it also sounds as if written **ei** when followed by **j**, as **desejo**, **igreja**, **seja**, **veja**, etc., which are pronounced as if written **deseijo**, etc.

³ Unaccented **o** at the end of a word is equivalent to **u** short: **póvo** = **póvu**.

is to be noted, however, that these combinations are pronounced, not as single sounds, but as if the letters were sounded separately yet with a slight abbreviation from the full values of the separate vowels.

The true diphthongs are known in Portuguese as the *nasal diphthongs*. These are *ãe* as in *mãe*, *ão* as in *mão*, *õe* as in *põe*, *ui* as in *muito*. (*Muito*, however, is a unique case.)

4. Nasal Sounds. — There are nasal sounds for most of the vowels. These are indicated either by the nasal diphthongs or by the single vowels followed by *m* or *n*, as *tão* or *tam*, *bem*, *sim*, *bom*, *um*. These words are pronounced as if they ended with an English *ng* in which the *g* is not heard. *Tão* is pronounced nearly as if written *towng* with the *ng* sound omitted or cut short. *Bem* is pronounced as if written *beng*, but without the *g* being sounded; *um* as if written *oong* but omitting the *g* sound.

All syllables ending in *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *õ*, *om*, *on*, *um*, and *un* have the nasal sound whether at the end of a word or followed by a consonant.

5. Consonants. — The consonants not mentioned here are pronounced as in English.

b is silent in *subdito*, *subject* (pronounced as if written *súdito*), and in *subjeitar*, an old form of *sujeitar*.

ç with the cedilla (*cedilha*) is soft as in French. The cedilla is used to soften the sound of *c* before *a*, *o*, and *u*: *calças* (pr. as if written *cálsas*).

c is silent when followed by *t* or *c*: *activo* (pr. as if written

ativo), **acção** (pr. as **ação**). Except **convicto**, **pacto**, **fricção**, **convicção**.

ch has the sound of *sh* in *she*: **chá** (pr. as if written **shah**); before consonants and in words of Greek origin it has the sound of *k*: **Christo** (pr. as **Kristo**).

g is hard before **a**, **o**, and **u** in all cases; before **e**, **i**, and **y** it has the sound of the French **j**: **gelo** (pr. as if written *hjelo*).

When **g** would ordinarily precede **e** or **i**, **u** is added before those vowels in order to give or preserve the hard sound: **entregar**, *to deliver*, has **entregue** for the past participle, thus preserving the hard **g** sound.

g when followed by **n** is silent: in the words **signal** (as if **sinal**) and **signalar** and words beginning with **assign**: as **assignar**, **assignatura**.

h has no sound of its own in Portuguese; it is not a letter, properly speaking, but an etymological mark or sign. It has a value, however, in connection with **c**, **l**, **n**, and **p**, which see.

j is pronounced as in French, like *g* in *midge*.

lh is pronounced like *lli* in *million*. In writing and printing these two letters belong to the syllable whose vowel follows and must be kept together. The syllables of **cordilheira** are **cor-di-lhei-ra**; of **filha** they are **fi-lha**.

m at the end of a word or syllable is nasal. **Bem** is pronounced as if spelled **beng**, but without the final **g**-sound; **bemdito** (pr. **bengdeeto**, but with the **g** silent).

In some words the **m** is apparently silent on account of the nasal sound: **damno** (pr. as if written **dánno**).

n never ends a word in Portuguese except **irman**, *sister*, **iman**, *magnet*, **hyphen**, **colon**, and certain antiquated

forms like **christan** for **christã**;¹ when it precedes final **s** it is nasal.

nh is sounded like *ni* in *union*, that is like the Spanish *ñ*, the Italian *gn*, or the French *gn*: **banho**, *bath*, **lenha**, *fire-wood*. In syllabication these two letters, when so pronounced, always belong with the vowel that follows them: **lenha** is divided **le-nha**.

There are a few words, however, which are compounded of the prefix **an** or **in**, in which the **nh** is not so pronounced or written: such as **anhydro**, **inhabil**, **inhalar**, **inhibir**, **inhumano**.

p is silent before **t**: **prompto** (pr. as if spelled **prônto**); **escrito** (pr. as if written **escrito**). Except that the **p** is pronounced in **captar**, **raptar**, **optar**, **repto**, and **mentecapto**. In **exempção** also the **p** is silent (pr. **izenssão**).

ph is pronounced like *f*: **photographia** (pr. as if spelled **fotografia**).

q is always followed by **u**, and always has the sound of *k*. **Qu** varies somewhat: before **a** and **o** the **u** is sounded, as **quando** (pr. **kwándo**); but before **e** and **i** the **u** is used with the **q** only for the purpose of producing or preserving the *k* sound and is therefore not heard: **quer** (pr. **ker**); **aqui** (pr. **akee**).

EXCEPTIONS: the **u** is sounded in **consequencia**, **frequente**, **equestre**, **antiquíssimo**. It is also allowable to sound the **u** in **questão**.

r has two sounds: when it begins a word, or is double, it is rolled as in French or Spanish: **rfo**, **érro**; in other

¹ It has lately been proposed in favor of orthographical reform that short final syllables now ending in *ã* shall be written **an**, as **iman**, **firman**, **orphan**, and the long ones shall end with the *ã*, as **irmã**, **manhã**, and **alemã**.

positions it is pronounced by striking the tongue lightly against the roof of the mouth almost as if pronouncing the letter **d**: **arara** (pr. nearly as if spelled **adada** but with the **d** approaching the English *r*-sound). Except: that the single **r** is rolled after **l, m, n, s**: **honrar, tenro, genro, Henrique, melro, chilar.**

s has the soft or hissing **s**-sound, and that of soft **z**. It has the **z**-sound when it stands between vowels: **rosa, casa** (pr. as if spelled **róza, cáza**). Except in cases of compound words where it has the **s**-sound.

It has the soft **s**-sound in most other cases.

th has the sound of **t**: **theoria** is pronounced as if written **teoria**.

w is used only in foreign words and should be pronounced as in the language from which those words are taken.

x has several sounds as follows:

1. like the English *ks* in words ending in **ex, ix, and ux, fixar** and its compounds and derivatives, **flexão** and related words such as **flexibilidade** and **sexo, fluxo, maximo, and lexicologia** (**index** and **appendix** are pronounced **índes** and **appêndes** in addition).

NOTE. — There are, however, some local differences in the pronunciation of some of these words: **flexão** properly pronounced **fleksão**, in Bahia is pronounced **flechão**.

2. like **s** when followed by **c, t, or p**: **extenso, excepto** (pr. as if **esténso, escépto**).

3. like **z** when preceded by **e** and followed by a vowel or by **h** and a vowel: **exemplo** (pr. **ezêmplo**); **exercito** (pr. **ezêrcito**); **exhausto** (pr. **ezausto**).

4. It is like **ss** or **ç** in **trouxe, anxiedade, syntaxe, defluxo**.

5. At the beginning of words, and in places other than those mentioned above, it is pronounced like the English *sh*; most cases fall under this rule: **xarope** (pr. as if **sharópe**); **exministro** (pr. as if written **eijministro**); **baixo** (pr. **báisho**); **lixo** (pr. **leesho**).

DIALECTICAL

6. In certain parts of Portugal one hears many pronunciations that are purely dialectical. In Minho for example the people generally say **binho** instead of **vinho**, *wine*, and **sordado** instead of **soldado**, *soldier*. In Traz-os-Montes they say **tchapeo** for **chapeo**, *hat*, **tchave** for **chave**, *key*, **djente** for **gente**, *folks*; the **caipiras** or backwoodsmen of the state of São Paulo in Brazil have a similar pronunciation which was probably introduced from Portugal.¹ See the example quoted in the exercise at page 166.

In Portugal as a rule the quantity of the short syllables is perceptibly shorter than in Brazil. **Sobrado**, **perigo**, and **pessoa** are so pronounced in full in the latter country, while in Portugal they are commonly pronounced **s'brado**, **p'rigo**, and **p'ssoa**. The **d** is pronounced in Brazil nearly as it is in the English language, but in Portugal it frequently has a strong resemblance to the English *th* in *these*, so that **desde** in Portugal sounds very like **thézthy**, and **dedo**, like **dáytho**, the *th* being soft like that in *though*.

¹ Julio Ribeiro, *Grammatica Portugueza*, 9-10.

7. **Slang.** — Like other languages Portuguese has its slang words or expressions; such words and expressions are called **calão**, **gíria**, or **geringónça**. Some of them are not Portuguese but simply fantastic expressions; for the most part, however, they are the ordinary words of the language used in some figurative or special sense. For example, **estar na bagagem** literally means *to be in the baggage*, but it is a slang expression used in regard to a person who is *behindhand*, or who is *a slow coach*. **Manda-chuva**, *one who orders the rain*, is slang equivalent to the American expression *political boss*.¹

ACCENT MARKS

8. The cedilla is used with **c** to show that that letter has the soft **c** sound.

The tilde (˜) is used to show that the vowel over which it is placed is a nasal. It is only used over **a** and **o**.

The acute accent (´) and the circumflex (ˆ) are used:

1. To show the position of the tonic accent, especially in homonyms where there is a chance of mistaking one word for another, as **esta**, *this*, and **está**, *it is*; **séria**, *serious*, and **seria**, *would be*.

2. To indicate contractions: **em relação á** (for **a a**) **idéa**, *with regard to the idea*.

¹ *A gíria Brasileira*, "Brazilian Slang," is the title of an interesting little book published at Bahia in 1899 by an able Brazilian scholar.

NOTE. — The omission of the accent sometimes entirely changes the meaning of a sentence; for example, **matar a sede** means *to quench one's thirst*, while **matar á sede** means *to kill with thirst*. In the second sentence the **á** is a contraction of the preposition **a**, *by* or *with*, and the article **a**, *the*.

3. To indicate what are called open (˘) and close (˙) sounds of the vowels **e** and **o**: **café**, **mercê**, **paletó**, **avô**.

TONE ACCENT

(See Exercise III, page 121)

9. Tone accent is a matter of so much importance in Portuguese that it is often quite impossible to understand the spoken language when the accents are improperly placed. Take as an illustration the word **sabia**: the accent may make it **sábia**, *a learned woman*, **sabía**, *I knew* or *he knew*, or **sabiá**, *the Brazilian robin*.

This kind of a case is not exceptional. In speaking the language, therefore, it is of the utmost importance that the accent be properly placed.

The tone accent always falls on one of the last three syllables. There is an apparent exception to this rule in the enclitic monosyllables which are joined to certain other words, as **digo-lhe**, *I tell you*; **gosta-lo**, *to like it*. In these instances the addition of this enclitic does not change the position of the accent even when it falls on the syllable preceding the antepenult. Example: **fála-se-lhes**.

a. There are no short and compact rules for guidance in the placing of the tone accent, and to almost every rule

formulated there are many exceptions. The greatest number of words have it on the penult; fewest have it on the antepenult. The following suggestions may be found useful. For the accents of verbs see the models at § 107, pages 72-75.

b. The following words take the accent on the *final syllable*:

1. Those ending in the nasal diphthongs:

ão,¹ except **bênção**, **frangão**, **órfão**, and **órgão**;

ãos;

ães;

ões.

2. Words ending in

i, except **álcali**, **espermacéti**, **quási**;

l, except words of Latin origin ending in **ilis**, as **dócil**, **fácil**, **hábil**, **útil**, and those ending in **vel**: **amável**, **agradável**, **crível**, **nível**;

im;

r, except **assúcar**, **cadáver**, **câncer**, **carácter**, **éter**, **júnior**, **mártir**, **néctar**, **súlfur**, and a few foreign words like **repórter** and **revólver**;

u, except **tribú**;

y, except **júry**, **tílbury**;

z.

c. The following have the accent on the *penult*:

1. Erudite forms from the Greek ending in **ia**: as **demo-cracia**, **geología**, **philosophía**, **autopsía**,² etc. Except the

¹ It was formerly the custom to write the final syllable of the third person plural of the first conjugation **ão**, thus **amão**, **amávão**, **amarão**, **amarfão**. In these cases the accent does not fall on the final **ão** except in the future **amarão**. It is now the custom to end these words in **am**, reserving the **ão**, for the future which is accented according to the rule.

² In Rio de Janeiro they say **autópsia**.

following which take it on the antepenult: **comédia, polícia, encyclopédia, geodésia, estratégia, necromância, farmácia.**

2. Words ending as follows:¹

LIST OF WORDS HAVING THE ACCENT ON THE PENULT

ENDING	EXAMPLE	ENDING	EXAMPLE
-aco-a	velhaco	-ardo-a	mostarda
-aço-a	bagação	-argo	amargo
-acho-a	despacho	-aro	amparo, <i>exc.</i> pássaro
-acto-a	contacto	-arro-a	cigarro
-ado-a	delgado	-asso-a	devasso
-ade	idade	-asto-a	nefasto
-ago-a	estrago	-aste	contraste
-age-em	estalagem	-ato-a	combata
-aldo	ribaldo	-ate	abacate
-alo-a	<i>exc.</i> escândalo, sândalo	-avo-a	escravo
-alho-a	soalho	-axo-a	(<i>see</i> acho)
-ama	panorama		
-ame	arame	-eço-a	aconteça
-ampo-a	estampa	-edo-a	brinquedo
-ança	balança	-ego-a	<i>exc.</i> tráfico
-anco-a	alavanca	-eiro	ferreiro
-ando-a	contrabando	-eito	respeito
-anho-a	campanha	-eite	leite
-ano-a	porcelana	-ejo-a	gracejo
-anto-a	adianta	-elho	evangelho
-ante	abundante	-ello-a	cancello-a
-arco-a	comarca	-elo	cogumelo

¹ This list might be extended, but the exceptions become too numerous for convenience.

ENDING	EXAMPLE	ENDING	EXAMPLE
-emo	extremo	-ino-a	pepino
-eme	leme, <i>exc.</i> íngreme	-into-a	precinto-a
-ença	nascença	-inte	ouvinte
-endo-a	legenda	-ique	alambique
-enho-a	engenho	-ira	caipira
-enso-a	imprensa	-isco-a	marisco
-ense	cearense	-ismo-a	fatalismo
-ento-a	alimenta	-iso	paraíso
-ente	presente	-isto-a	revista
-erso-a	conversa	-istro	registro
-erto-a	concerto	-ite	limite, <i>exc.</i> trâmite
-essa	impressa	-ivo-a	objectivo
-esto	modesto	-ixo-a	suffixo
-eto-a	completo	-izo-a	prejuízo
-ete	canivete		
-exa	perplexa	-oa	canoa, <i>exc.</i> nódoa, névoa
-eza	baroneza	-oço-a	almoço
-ice	velhice, <i>exc.</i> ápice, vertice, obice	-ode	pagode
-icho	rabicho	-ogo-a	fogo
-iço-a	rolição	-oito-a	biscoito
-ife	recife	-olho-a	escolho
-igo-a	<i>exc.</i> código, pródigo	-olo-a	viola, <i>exc.</i> frívolo, malévolo
-ilho-a	quartilho	-olto-a	revolta
-ilo-a	crocodilo	-olvo	revolvo
-imba	cacimba	-oma	diploma
-indo-a	tamarindo	-ombo-a	quilombo
-ingo-a	domingo	-ona	azeitona
		-onça	geringonça

ENDING	EXAMPLE	ENDING	EXAMPLE
-ondo-a	redondo maribondo	-uco-a	caduco maluco
-onga	oblonga	-udo-a	agudo
-onha	vergonha risonha	-ude	altitude saude
-ono	abandono	-ugem	ferrugem
-onto-a	affronta	-uega	Noruega
-onte	horizonte	-ulho-a	embrulho
-oque	reboque	-umo-a	resumo
-ora	espora, <i>exc.</i> víbora, ámphora, cáñfora	-ume	betume
-orço-a	esforça	-uno-a	gatuno
-orma	reforma	-umno-a	alumno
-orme	conforme	-undo-a	fecunda
-orno-a	contorno	-unho-a	testemunho
-orro-a	cachorro	-uncto-a	defuncta
-orto-a	morto	-upo-a	chalupa
-orte	consorte	-uque	batuque
-oso	caprichoso	-uro-a	figura
-osso	ecolosso	-urro-a	empurra
-osto-a	desgosta	-uso-a	confusa
-oto-a	gafanhoto terremoto	-usto-a	abuso robusta arbusto
-ote	serrote	-uto-a	enxuto
		-ucto	fructo
		-upto	corrupto

d. The following take the accent on the *antepenult*:

1. Masculine nouns from the Greek such as **astrónomo**, **geólogo**, **philósopho**.
2. Absolute superlatives in **-imo**: **ilustríssimo**, **óptimo**.
3. Words ending as in the following:

LIST OF WORDS HAVING THE ACCENT ON THE
ANTEPENULT

ENDING	EXAMPLE	ENDING	EXAMPLE
-acio	palacio	-icio-a	sacrificio
-aculo	espectaculo	-icie	superficie
-afico	biografico	-iculo-a	agricola
-aia	praia	-idio-a	suicidio
-alo (<i>few</i>)	escandalo, <i>exc.</i> badálo	-ifero	montifero
-ancia	abundancia	-ifico	magnifico
-andega	alfandega	-igero	belligero
-ania	subterranea	-ilio	exilio
-anico	vulcanico	-inio-a	dominio
-antico	romantico	-irio-a	delirio
-astico-a	elastica	-itico-a	politica
-atico-a	aquatico	-itimo-a	legitimo
		-ivoro	carnivoro
-eio-a	passeio	-odico	methodico
-elico	evangelico	-ogico	logico
-encia	corpulencia	-ogio	relogio, <i>exc.</i> elogio
-enito	congenito	-ographo	geographo
-erico-a	generica	-olico-a	diabolico
-erio-a	materia, <i>exc.</i> bateria	-loio	espolio
-errimo	miserrimo	-ologo	geologo
-etico-a	magnetico	-onico-a	carbonico
-etrico-a	geometrico	-onio-a	demonio
		-onymo-a	enonymo
-fugo	centrifugo	-ore	arvore, mar- more
-geno-a	indigena	-orico-a	categorico

ENDING	EXAMPLE	ENDING	EXAMPLE
-orio-a	historia, <i>exc.</i> categoria	-unio	importunio
-otico-a	narcotico	-uo	melifluo, <i>exc.</i> amúo
-uncio-a	pronuncio	-uria	penuria
-undio-a	gerundio	-usculo	maiusculo

e. There is a natural tendency in Portuguese to avoid placing the accent as far back as the antepenult; so much so that words thus accented are called **esdrúxulos**, a word of Italian origin (**sdrúcciolo**, *slippery*) which is used figuratively in Portuguese to mean *odd, strange, extravagant*. The **esdrúxulos** are few in number and are nearly all erudite forms.

QUANTITY

10. The tonic or accented vowels are always long; the atonic or unaccented ones are generally short: **útil, agradável.**¹

SYLLABICATION

(See Exercise IV, page 123)

11. In syllabication,

- a. Diphthongs cannot be separated.
- b. Monosyllables cannot be divided.
- c. The consonant combinations **lh**, **nh**, **rh**, and **ph** cannot be separated from each other or from the following vowels with which they form syllables: **ma-nhã, ba-ta-lha, phi-lo-so-phi-a.**

¹ Professor Said Ali kindly adds the following important note regarding this rule: When the tonic vowel is followed by **c, f, p, rr, ss,** or **t**, it is short. Compare **bote, bode; mato, medo; faca, vaga.**

d. A consonant between vowels belongs with the second one: **na-ríz, bár-ba-ro.**

e. **G** and **q** followed by **u** remain with the vowel that follows: **guin-das-te, qual-quer.**

f. Double consonants are separated: **bel-lo, af-fli-cto.**

g. Mute letters, **c** in **ch**, **t** in **th**, **g** in **gn**, **t** in **ct**, **t** in **pt**, go with the following vowel: **ar-chi-tec-tu-ra, pan-the-is-mo, si-gnal, fru-cto, ca-pti-vo, ex-em-pto.**

h. In nasal syllables **m** and **n** generally belong with the preceding vowel: **bem-di-to, man-so, dan-sar.**

i. But when **m** is followed by **n** both of these letters belong with the following vowel: **so-mno, da-mno.**

j. Compound words are divided according to their elements: **sub-stan-ti-vo.**

CAPITAL LETTERS

12. The rules for capitals are the same in general as in English; except that adjectives derived from proper names and **eu, I**, are not written with capitals save for some other reason such as at the beginning of a sentence: **francez, French; inglez, English.** This rule is not invariable, however, and one sees the proper adjectives sometimes with the capital and sometimes without. The use of the capital in such cases is regarded by some authors as more strictly the Portuguese custom.

In addressing persons as **Senhor, Senhora, Vossa Senhoria, Vossa Santidade**, etc., it is the custom to begin these words with capitals. But capitals are not used when a person is referred to without the name, as **o sr. engenheiro tomou conta da estrada.**

ORTHOGRAPHY

13. Portuguese orthography is remarkably phonetic, and after a little practise one can usually spell correctly words heard for the first time. The etymology of the words, however, is not lost sight of, though some writers adhere more closely to the etymology while others tend toward phonetic simplification.

The only exceptions to the phonetic writing of vowel sounds are:

1. That unaccented **o** is generally pronounced like **u** short, as **bonito** (pr. as if **bonítu**).

2. Unaccented **e** is often pronounced like **i** short, as **doce** (pr. as if **dóci**).

a. The following will serve as examples of words spelled in different ways. For present purposes either spelling may be regarded as correct.

ETYMOLOGICAL SPELLING	PHONETIC SPELLING	MEANING
aprender	aprender	to learn
aproximar	aproximar	to approach
caridade	caridade	charity
commigo	comigo	with me
dicto	dito	said
edade	idade	age
egreja	igreja	church
eschola	escola	school
escripto	escrito	written
logar	lugar	place

There are also many antiquated forms found in old books such as:

he	for é	is
hum, huma	for um, uma	a or one
sam	for são	are

b. It is to be expected that the spelling of the present day should differ considerably from that of the sixteenth century, but aside from these differences one finds certain variations (called syncretic forms) that often puzzle the beginner. These come chiefly from the equivalence of the diphthongs **ou** and **oi**. The following is a list of the most common syncretic forms. Either form is allowable.

LIST OF COMMON SYNCRETIC FORMS

açoute	açoite	whip-lash
cousa	coisa	thing
couro	coiro	leather
doudo	doido	crazy
dous	dois	two
lousa	loisa	paving slate
mouta	moita	coppice
noute	noite	night
ouro	oiro	gold
thesouro	thesoiro	treasure
vindouro	vindoiro	future

c. On the whole the tendency is toward the phonetic spelling, a tendency that has lately received much fresh impulse. These variations, however, are not to be regarded as license to spell words in any way.¹

¹ The most comprehensive study of modern Portuguese orthography is *Ortografia nacional, simplificação e uniformização sistemática das ortografias portuguesas*. Por A. R. Gonçalves Viana. Lisboa, 1904.

II. ARTICLES

DEFINITE ARTICLE

(See Exercise V, page 125)

14. The definite article has gender and number to agree with its noun.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	ENGLISH
<i>Singular</i>	o	a	the
<i>Plural</i>	os	as	the

The Spanish form of the definite article is used in two instances: **El-Rei**, *the King*, and **Eldorado**.

15. Contractions. — The articles combine with certain prepositions as follows:

a, *to*, combines with the different forms of the article making **ao**, **á**, **aos** and **ás**, *to the*.

de, *of*, combines with them forming **do**, **da**, **dos**, and **das**, *of the*.

em, *in*, combines with them to form **no**, **na**, **nos**, and **nas**, *in the* (instead of *em o*, *em a*, etc.).

per, *by*, combines with them forming **pelo**, **pela**, **pelos**, and **pelas**, *by the*. **Polo** and **pola** are antiquated forms.

USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS

		<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
		MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	
a	<i>to</i>	ao	á	aos	ás	<i>to the</i>
de	<i>of</i>	do	da	dos	das	<i>of the</i>
em	<i>in</i>	no	na	nos	nas	<i>in the</i>
per	<i>by</i>	pelo	pela	pelos	pelas	<i>by the</i>

16. Syntax of the Definite Article. — The definite article is used as a determinative: **o menino**, *the boy*; **o bom**, *the good*.

It is used before certain proper geographical names, especially those of rivers, mountains, seas, etc.: **a França**, *France*; **o Têjo**, *the Tagus*; **o Andes**, *the Andes*; **o Atlantico**, *the Atlantic*.

In Brazil this rule is not universally followed. The names of the states of Parahyba and Bahia are used with the feminine article, while the article is not generally used with the names of the states of Pernambuco, Alagôas, Sergipe, São Paulo, Santa Catherina, Minas Geraes, and Mato Grosso.

It is used familiarly before the names of persons: **onde está o João?** *where is John?*; **o Guimarães chegou**, *Guimarães has come*.

It is used before pronouns and possessive adjectives: **o meu chapeo**, *my hat*; **a tua vontade**, *thy will*. In this case the article may be omitted in familiar style. It is also omitted in speaking of one's kin, as **meu pai**, *my father*, not **o meu pai**, unless emphasis is required, when it is used.

It is inserted before nouns used in a general sense where *in general*, *all*, *every* may be understood: **o ouro é mais precioso que a prata**, *gold is more precious than silver*.

It is used to indicate time and season: **às duas horas**, *at two o'clock*; **no inverno**, *in winter*.

It is used before nouns of weight and measure: **dois milreis o kilo**, **o metro**, *two milreis a kilo, a meter*.

It is used before the names of languages: **estudando o portuguez**, *studying Portuguese*; **entendo o francez**, *I understand French*.

It is used after verbs denoting possession: **estou com as mãos sujas**, *my hands are soiled*; **tem os olhos pretos**, *he (or she) has black eyes*.

It is used after **todo** in both numbers: **todo o homen é mortal** or **todos os homens são mortaes**, *all men are mortal*.

It is used before certain titles: **O Senhor Costa**, **O Coronel Sampaio**.

It is omitted before the titles **Sua Majestade**, *His Majesty*; **Vossa Alteza**, *Your Highness*; **Vossa Senhoria**.

It is omitted before numerals used as titles: **Carlos quinto**, *Charles the fifth*.

It is omitted with appositional nouns: **é filho do Coronel**, *he is the son of the colonel*.

(For demonstrative pronouns having the same forms as the definite articles see § 65c. and § 87.)

INDEFINITE ARTICLE

(See Exercise VI, page 126)

17. The indefinite article has gender and number to agree with its noun.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	ENGLISH
<i>Singular</i>	um	uma	a, an ¹
<i>Plural</i>	uns	umas	some

¹ The indefinite article **um**, **uma**, should not be confused with the cardinal number which has the same form in the singular (see page 50) but has no plural.

18. Contractions. — The indefinite article combines with *em* in forming *num*, *numa*, *nuns*, and *numas* (in place of *em um*, etc.).

It also combines with *de*, *of*, forming *dum*, though this is generally written *d'um*.

The old form of the indefinite article was *hum*, *huma*, etc. The indefinite article has a negative form *nenhum*, *none*, which still retains the *h* that one often sees in the old forms.

a. Syntax of the Indefinite Article. — The indefinite article always precedes its noun or its substantive adjective, as *uma pessoa*, *a person*; *um desconhecido*, *an unknown person*.

b. The indefinite article is omitted:

1. Before predicative nouns denoting what a person is: *seu amigo é general*, *his friend is a general*; *elle assentou praça*, *he enlisted*.

2. After verbs of possession or denoting condition: *estou com fome*, *I am hungry*; *tenho bom apetite*, *I have a good appetite*.

3. After various indefinites, *outro*, *tal*, *certo*, *tanto*, *semelhante*, etc.: *tal dia*, *tal noite*, *such a day*, *such a night*; *foi sem dizer palavra*, *he went without saying a word*.

4. After an exclamatory *que*: *que bella noite*, *what a fine night*.

III. NOUNS

INFLECTION

19. Portuguese nouns have no case forms; they distinguish in form only between singular and plural.

PLURAL FORMATION

(See Exercise VII, page 127)

20. The plural is formed by adding **s** to the singular: **amigo**, *friend*, pl. **amigos**; **casa**, *house*, pl. **casas**.

To this rule there are the following exceptions:

1. Final **m** changes to **n** before the final **s**: **homem**, *man*, pl. **homens**.

2. Final **ix** and **ex** change to **ice** before the final **s**: **index**, pl. **indices**; **appendix**, pl. **appendices**.

3. Final **r** and **z** add **e** before the final **s**; **mar**, *sea*, pl. **mares**; **cruz**, *cross*, pl. **cruzes**.

4. Final **al**, **ol**, and **ul** are changed to **aes**, **oes**, and **ues**: **sal**, *salt*, pl. **saes**; **dedal**, *thimble*, pl. **dedaes**; **anzol**, *fish-hook*, pl. **anzoes**; **paul**, *swamp*, pl. **paues**.

Except that **consul**, **mal**, **cal**, **real** (*money*) have for plurals **consules**, **males**, **cales**, and **reis**.

5. Final **el** is changed to **eis**: **papel**, *paper*, pl. **papeis**; **anel**, *ring*, pl. **anneis**. **Mel**, *honey*, becomes either **meis** or **meles**.

6. Final **il**, when the word has the acute accent, is changed to **is**: **barril**, *barrel*, pl. **barris**; **funil**, *funnel*, pl. **funis**.

When, however, the word has the grave accent the final **il** is changed to **eis**: **dócil**, *docile*, pl. **doceis**; **fóssil**, *fossil*, pl. **fósseis**.

a. Nouns ending in **ão** form the plural in three ways:

1. Most nouns ending in **ão** change **ão** to **ões**: **acção**, *action*, pl. **acções**.

2. A few add **s** to the singular: these are **mão**, *hand*, pl. **mãos**; **irmão**, *brother*, pl. **irmãos**; **pagão**, *payment*, pl. **pagãos**; **orfão**, *orphan*, pl. **orfãos**; **orgão**, *organ*, pl. **orgãos**; **sotão**, *bottom*, pl. **sotões**; **temporão**, *period*, pl. **temporões**; **vão**, *empty*, pl. **vãos**; **zangão**, *bull*, pl. **zangões**.

3. A few others change **ão** to **ães**: **escrivão**, *notary*, pl. **escrivães**.

escrivães. These are **alemão, cão, capellão, capitão, catalão, charletão, deão, ermitão, escrivão, guardião, pão, sacristão, tabellião.**

b. Nouns ending in **s** have the same form in the plural: **o pires, os pires, the saucers; o caes, os caes, the quays.** Except **Deus, cos,** and **simples (drug)** become **deuses, coses, simplices.**

c. When the accent of a word ending in **ão** is grave, the plural is always in **ãos: órgão, organ, pl. órgãos; and similarly benção, blessing; accordão, sentence of a court; sotão, attic.**

21. Plurals Only. — Many nouns are used only in the plural. Such are

algemas, fetters	exequias, funeral rites
alviçaras, rewards	expensas, costs
annaes, annals	ferias, holidays
arredores, environs	manes, shades
calças, trousers	matinas, matins
calendas, calends	nonas, nones
ceroulas, drawers	nupcias, nuptials
confins, confines	trevas, darkness
completas, complin	viveres, provisions

22. Compound Words. — Compound words generally have the plural form for the final word when one of the components has an adverbial sense: **salvo-conducto, pl. salvo-conductos; linguas neolatinas, neo-Latin languages; jornaes luso-brasileiros, Portuguese-Brazilian journals; guarda-sol, sunshade, pl. guarda-soes; contra-veneno, antidote, pl. contra-venenos.**

a. Compound words take the plural in both parts when they both represent functions belonging to the noun: **surdo-mudo**, *deaf-mute*, pl. **surdos-mudos**.

b. As in English some nouns are plural but are used only in a singular sense: **Montes Claros fica na planície**, *Montes Claros is on the plain*.

Compound words united by **de** usually take the plural in the first part only: **flor-de-lis**, pl. **flores-de-lis**.

c. Plural nouns that take the article, however, are used in the plural: **os Alpes ficam na Suíça**, *the Alps are in Switzerland*; **os Estados Unidos fizeram guerra**, *the United States made war*.

23. Varied Meanings.—Some names change their meaning with the change of number. These correspond to similar changes that take place in the English language as illustrated by the words *iron* and *irons*, *liberty* and *liberties*.

SINGULAR	MEANING	PLURAL	MEANING
bem	well, good	bens	property
côrte	court	côrtes	congress, tribunals
dote	dowery	dotes	accomplishments
ferro	iron	ferros	shackles
filho	son	filhos	children (<i>or sons</i>)
honra	honor	honras	solemnities
letra	letter	letras	literature
liberdade	liberty	liberdades	impertinence
molhado	wet	molhados	groceries
pai	father	país	parents
parte	part	partes	parties (<i>judicial</i>)
secco	dry	seccos	dry-goods
zelo	zeal	zelos	jealousy

GENDER OF NOUNS

(See Exercise VIII, page 128)

24. Gender is grammatical, and all nouns are either masculine or feminine.¹

The gender of words is sometimes determined by meaning and at other times by termination.

There are no rules covering all cases, and there are many exceptions to those given below.

25. Masculine. — The following are *masculine*:

1. Nouns denoting males and their offices and occupations: *o homem, the man; o cavallo, the horse; juiz, judge; pai, father.*

NOTE. — In the names of animals having two genders the masculine form is generally used to designate the species: *o lobo, the wolf.*

2. Nouns not implying sex distinction and ending in
á (*a* with acute accent) *sofá, tafetá, chá* (except *a pá, shovel or spade*).
é (except *chaminé, fé, galé, maré, ré, sé*).
i (except *lei, law, grei, flock*).

¹ *Neuter Gender.* — Strictly speaking there is no neuter gender in Portuguese, but certain words have been called neuter (and also common gender) by some grammarians. Such forms are the impersonal definite pronouns *isso, isto, aquilo*, and *tudo*. The cardinal numerals also have no gender except *um úma, dois duas*, and those compounded of *cento as duzentos-as, trezentos-as*.

o (short or mute). This does not refer to the ending *ão*.

ô (accented **o**) for the most part. The following, however, are feminine: **enxô**, *adz*; **mô**, *millstone*; **avô**, *grandmother*; **filhô**, *cake*; **ilhô**, *eyelet*.

l (except **cal**, *lime*, **cathedral**, **moral**, **pastoral**).

m (except **ordem**, *order*, and those ending in **gem**).

r (except **colher**, *spoon*; **côr**, *color*; **dôr**, *pain*; **flôr**, *flower*).

s (except those used only in the plural and ending in **as**: **andas**, **arrhas**, **cocegas**, and a few in **es**: **preces**, **ephemerides**).

3. Nouns ending in **ote** and **ume** are generally masculine. Examples: **dote**, **chicote**, **lume**, **costume**, **betume**.

4. Infinitive verbs are masculine when used as substantives: **o andar do cavallo**, *the gait of the horse*.

5. Masculine are the names of seas, rivers, lakes, and mountains, of the letters of the alphabet, of the numbers, the months, the points of the compass, and the notes in music.

26. Feminine. — The following are *feminine*:

a. Nouns denoting females and their names and occupations: **a vacca**, *the cow*, **mãi**, *mother*, **costureira**, *seamstress*, **rainha**, *queen*.

b. NOTE. — In cases of sex distinction there are generally two forms, as **moço**, *young man*, **moça**, *young woman*, **poeta**, *poet*, **poetisa**, *poetess*. There are, however, some words which have the same form for both genders, such as **martyr**, **jovem**, and **tigre**, which may be either masculine or feminine.

c. In some cases there is no masculine form of a noun: **rã**, *frog*, **abelha**, *bee*, **formiga**, *ant*, **aguia**, *eagle*, **onça**, *panther*, **cobra**, *snake*, **truta**, *trout*, **mosca**, *fly*. When it becomes necessary in such cases to indicate sex, it is done by use of the word **macho**, *male*, or **femea**, *female*; **o salmão macho**, *the male salmon*, or **a onça femea**, *the female panther*; **o corvo macho**, *the male crow*.

d. Nouns not implying sex distinction ending in:

a or ã. Except **dia**, *day*, **mappa**, *map*, and words from the Greek ending in **ma**: **aroma**, *clima*, *climate*, **diploma**, *dogma*, **emblema**, *idioma*, **poema**, *thema*, **problema**, *symptoma*, **epigramma**.

ade, as **caridade**, *charity*.

ude, as **virtude**. Except **alaude**, *ataude*, **açude**, *almude*, **grude**.

gem. Except **pagem**, *page*, and **selvagem**, *savage*, which may be of either gender.

ie, as **planície**.

27. Common Terminations. — The following terminations are common to both genders: Words ending in

az	{ Masc.	alcatraz , ananaz , anthras , cabaz , cartaz , gaz , lilaz , rapaz .
	Fem.	paz , tenaz .
ez	{ Masc.	arnez , convez , freguez , jaez , mez , pez , revez , xadréz .
	Fem.	altivez , honradez , fez , mudez , pequenhez , rapidez , redondez , rez , solidez , surdez , tez , timidez , torquez , vez .

iz { Masc. **almofariz, giz, matiz, nariz, paiz, pleuriz, tapiz, verniz.**
Fem. **buíz, cerviz, cicatriz, codorniz, matriz, perdiz, raiz, sobrepelliz.**

oz { Masc. **albernoz, algoz, aljaroz, arroz, cadoz, coz, retroz.**
Fem. **foz, noz, voz.**

uz { Masc. **alcaçuz, alcatruz, arcabuz, capuz, cuzcuz, lapuz, obuz.**
Fem. **cruz, luz.**

e { Masc. **broche, café, carcere, codice, corte, dente, epitome, tapete, traquete, valle, vertice.**
Fem. **arte, ave, chave, corte, crise, fé, fome, libré, lide, nave, neve, ponte, ralé, rede, saude, sé, sebe, sede, sege, torre, torrente.**

ão { Masc. { I. Augmentatives, even though derived from feminine original. Examples: **caixão (caixa), portão (porta) mulherão (mulher).**
II. Those in **ão** and not derived from words of the third declension of the Latin: **coração, grão, sabão, siphão, trovão.**
Fem. { Words so ending derived from words of the third declension in the Latin: **acção, constituição, dicção, execução, feição, instituição, legião, lentidão, mansidão, multidão, opinião, rebellião, região, resolução, servidão, solidão, união.** (But **pão** from *panis* and **sermão** from *sermo* are both masculine.)

28. Nouns of Opposite Sex. (See Exercise IX, page 129.) — Nouns denoting individuals of opposite sex may be either *related*, *unrelated*, or *identical*. They are

a. Related when the feminine form is derived from the masculine either

I. By adding *a* to the masculine form:

auctor , author	auctora , authoress
cantor , singer (<i>male</i>)	cantora , singer (<i>female</i>)
inglez , Englishman	ingleza , English woman
senhor , gentleman	senhora , lady

NOTE. — A few nouns in *r* have two feminine forms, as **lavrador**, **lavradora**, or **lavradeira**; **cantor**, **cantora**, or **cantatriz**. There is also a tendency to change final *o* to *eira*, as **trabalhador**, **trabalhadeira**.

II. By changing final *o* or *e* to *a*, as

hospede , guest (<i>male</i>)	hospeda , guest (<i>female</i>)
mano , brother	mana , sister
mestre , teacher (<i>male</i>)	mestra , teacher (<i>female</i>)
moço , young man	moça , young woman
parente , kinsman	parenta , kinswoman

III. By changing the terminal to *inha*, *essa*, *eza*, *neza*, *ola*:

barão , baron	baroneza , baroness
conde , count	condessa , countess
gallo , cock	gallinha , hen
hespanhol , Spaniard	hespanhola , Spanish woman
principe , prince	princeza , princess

b. Related but irregular forms of nouns of opposite sex are the following:

MASCULINE	FEMININE
avô , grandfather	avó , grandmother
dom , sir, lord	dona , lady
frade , friar (<i>ant. freire</i>)	freira , nun
ladrão , thief	ladra , woman thief
perú , turkey-cock	perua , turkey-hen
rapaz , lad	rapariga , girl
rei , king	rainha , queen
réo , defendant	ré , female defendant

c. Unrelated when not derived from the same word:

boi , ox	vacca , cow
cavallo , horse	egua , mare
genro , son-in-law	nora , daughter-in-law
pai , father	mãe , mother

d. Identical when the same word may be of either gender:

camarada (*m. or f.*), companion.
jovem (*m. or f.*), a young man *or* young woman
guia, guide
sentinella, sentinel

29. Closely Similar Related Nouns. — The Portuguese contains many nouns that are related in form and meaning, yet distinct in sex and significance. Following are some of these words:

MASCULINE

bago	jarro
barco	lanço
bodo	lenho
caneco	madeiro
cantharo	marujo
carreiro	modo
cerco	pago
cesto	poço
cevo	ponto
chuço	porto
cimo	ramo
cinto	ribeiro
corno	rio
encosto	sacco
fabrico ¹	saio
folho	sapato
fosso	tacho
friso	taleigo
fruto	trilho
gorro	troco
grito	vallo
horto	veio

The feminine forms
differ only in ending
in **a** instead of **o**.

In each case these nouns contain the same fundamental idea, but the sense of the feminine form is more general, while that of the masculine is more specific. For example *fruta* is used for fruit in general, while *fruto* refers to one kind of fruit; *madeiro*

¹ The accent in this case is also changed from *fabrico* to *fábrica*.

is one kind of **madeira** (*wood*), and **bago** is one kind of a **baga** (*berry*).¹

30. Similar Unrelated Nouns.— There are other words that bear a similar resemblance to each other, but which have no genetic relations and have widely different meanings. Such are:

MASCULINE	MEANING	FEMININE	MEANING
banho	bath	banha	lard
barro	clay	barra	bar (<i>of stream</i>)
caso	case	casa	house
espinho	thorn	espinha	spinal column (<i>but espinhas de peixe, fish-bones</i>)
escolho	cliff	escolha	choice
peito	breast	peita	bribe
prato	plate	prata	silver
queixo	jaw	queixa	complaint
solo	soil	sola	sole leather

The same word sometimes occurs as a noun, adjective, or verb; in such cases the nature of the word is indicated by the context.

31. There are still other words that are spelled precisely alike, but differ from each other in gender and in meaning. Following are some of these words:

¹ Julio Ribeiro in his *Grammatica Portuguesa*, page 84, says that the feminine form of several of these words indicates always an increase of volume or size.

MASCULINE	MEANING	FEMININE	MEANING
o capital	principal (<i>money</i>)	a capital	chief city
o chrisma	ointment	a chrisma	sacrament of confirmation
o cura	curate	a cura	cure
o guarda	warder	a guarda	care
o lingua	interpreter	a lingua	tongue
o lente	lecturer	a lente	lens
o sota	groom	a sota	queen (<i>at cards</i>)

QUALIFYING SUFFIXES

(See Exercise X, page 130)

32. Suffixes are extensively and effectively used to modify and extend the meaning of nouns and adjectives, and even of verbs. In these cases the meaning of the parent word is carried over in some modified form to the new word. It should be noted, however, that these suffixes do not have, as a rule, such exact meanings as do the prefixes. Most of the suffixes are directly from the Latin, while *ista*, *isme*, *ite*, and *izar* are from the Greek. Only the more important of them can be mentioned here.

EXAMPLES

TERMINATION	ORIGINAL WORD	MEANING	WITH SUFFIX	MEANING
-ada	limão	lemon	limonada	lemonade
	marmelo	quince	marmelada ¹	marmalade
	mulher	woman	mulherada	a lot of women
	baixo	low	baixada	low ground
	faca	knife	facada	a knife cut

¹ This word has been adopted into the English language with a meaning very different from its original one which was a preparation from the quince.

TERMINATION	ORIGINAL WORD	MEANING	WITH SUFFIX	MEANING
-agem	homem	man	homenagem	homage
	vassalo	vassal	vassalagem	vassalage
-al	café	coffee	cafezal	field of coffee
	(The z in cafezal is for the sake of euphony.)			
	banana	banana	bananal	field of bananas
	milho	corn	milhoral	field of corn
-ado	consul	consul	consulado	consulate
-cida	rei	king	regicida	king-killer
	formiga	ant	formicida	ant-killer
-aria	cavallo	horse	cavallaria	cavalry
	porcô	hog	porcaria	filth
-ario ¹	botica	apothecary's shop	boticario	apothecary
-eiro-a ²	mina	mine	mineiro	miner
	chá	tea	chaleira	teakettle (or kettle)
	(The l in chaleira is for euphony.)			
-ense	Brasil	Brazil	brasiliense	Brazilian
-ez	França	France	francez	French
-eza	rico	rich	riqueza	riches
	pobre	poor	pobreza	poverty
-ude	quieto (adj.)	quiet	quietude (n.)	quietude

¹ -ario is the erudite form of eiro; many of the words so ending correspond to the English termination *ary*, as **secretario**, **santuário**, **vocabulário**.

² This ending is especially useful and is easily managed. It corresponds in part to the English ending *er* as illustrated in the words *bank*, *banker*, but it has a wider application in Portuguese, as for example: **pedra**, *stone*, **pedreira**, *stone quarry*, **pedreiro**, *quarryman*, and sometimes *stone mason*; **sapato**, *shoe*, **sapateiro**, *shoemaker*. The common names of many trees are similarly derived from the names of their fruits: **pécego**, *peach*, **pecegueiro**, *peach-tree*; **coco**, *the coco-nut*, **coqueiro**, *the coco-palm*.

TERMINATION	ORIGINAL WORD	MEANING	WITH SUFFIX	MEANING
-udo	This suffix expresses abundance or intensity, as			
	cabeça	head	cabeçudo	big-headed, pig-headed
	beijo	lip	beijudo	thick-lipped
-or	orar	to orate	orador	orator
	falar	to talk	falador	talker
	trabalhar	to work	trabalhador	laborer

33. Many other suffixes are so nearly like forms in English that they will be recognized, such as those ending in **ficar** corresponding to the English *fy*: **clarificar**, *to clarify*, **purificar**, *to purify*, **classificar**, *to classify*; others ending in **mente** corresponding to the English ending *ly*, as **grandamente**, *grandly*, **claramente**, *clearly*, **escuramente**, *darkly*; and in **ista** corresponding to the English *ist*, as **capitalista**, *a capitalist*, **dentista**, **socialista**, etc. Many words ending in **orio** correspond approximately to English words ending in *ory*: **consistorio**, **repertorio**. Many endings in **ico** correspond to the English ending *ic*, as **artístico**, **simbólico**; many in **avel**, **evel**, and **ivel** correspond to the English endings *able* and *ible*, as **notavel**, **veneravel**, **indelevel**, **risivel**, **terrivel**. The termination **ivo** often corresponds to the English *ive*, as **instrutivo**, **executivo**.

34. The infinitives of verbs are often used as plural nouns: **dizer**, *to say*, **os dizeres**, *the sayings*; **poder**, *to be able*, **os poderes**, *the powers*.

AUGMENTATIVES

35. Augmentatives are formed by the addition of the suffixes **ão**, **arão**, **aça**, **anha**, **az**, **azio**, and **ona** as here illustrated.

ORIGINAL	MEANING	AUGMENTATIVE	MEANING
casa	house	casarão	big house
monte	hill, heap	montanha	mountain
mulher	woman	mulheraça	big woman
porta	door	portão	gate
rapaz	boy	rapagão	big fellow
rato	rat	ratão	big rat
nariz	nose	narigão	big nose

a. An additional augmentative effect is produced by giving a masculine ending to a feminine noun: **mulherão**, *an enormous woman* or *an amazon*.

b. The augmentatives sometimes convey an idea of ridicule or irony. For example, **ratão** is used as a slang expression for *a queer fellow*.

DIMINUTIVES

(See Exercise XI, page 131)

36. Diminutives are formed by the use of the following suffixes:

SUFFIX	ORIGINAL	MEANING	DIMINUTIVE	MEANING
-inho-a	livro	book	livrinho	little book
-zinho-a	mão	hand	mãozinha	little hand
-eto-a	folha	leaf	folheto	pamphlet
-ito-a	mosca	fly	mosquito	gnat
-ote	camara	room	camarote	cabin (<i>on ship</i>)
-ola	fazenda	estate	fazendola	a small farm

SUFFIX	ORIGINAL	MEANING	DIMINUTIVE	MEANING
-ulo-a	corpo	body	corpúsculo	molecule
-ino-a	pequeno	small	pequenino	very small (boy)
-ete	pobre	poor	pobrete	rather poor
-ilho	cinto	belt	cintilho	hat-band
-im	camara	room	camarim	dressing room (of theater)
-ella	costa	side	costella	rib
-ejo	lugar	place	lugarejo	small town
-isco	chuva	rain	chuvisco	drizzling rain

37. A still further arbitrary diminutive effect is produced by a repetition or drawing out of the syllables of the usual diminutives, as **pequenininho** or **pequeninozinho**, *very, very small*.

38. Another class of diminutives includes certain proper names. These, however, do not always imply smallness, but they are used as terms of endearment or compassion and as nicknames. The names for José are: **Zé**, **Zezé**, **Zéca**, **Zezinho**, **Josezinho**, **Zequinho**, **Júca**, **Juquina**, **Jóca**, **Cazuzo**, **Zuza**, **Zuca**, **Zuzu**; for Francisco are used: **Chico**, **Chiquinho**, **Chichi**, **Francisquinho**, and **Francisquito**; for Anna are used: **Anninha**, **Anninhas**, **Annazinha**, **Naninha**, **Nicota**, **Annicota**, **Annica**, **Annóca**, **Nanáca**, **Anniquita**, **Naná**, **Ná**, and **Nazinha**; for João they are **Janjão**, **Joãozinho**, **Jóca**, **Joanninho**, **Noca**; for Maria they are **Mariquinha**, **Maroca**, **Mariasinha**, **Marica**, **Mariquita**.

IV. ADJECTIVES

(See Exercise XII, page 132)

39. The adjectives have gender, number, and degree of comparison.

a. They agree in gender and number with their nouns; **mulher sensata**, *a sensible woman*, **homens velhos**, *old men*.

b. When **mesmo** and **proprio** are used in connection with a pronoun they must agree with the noun so represented. **Eu mesmo** or **eu mesma** according as the speaker is masculine or feminine.

c. When there is more than one noun, the adjective usually agrees with the last one: **desejos e virtudes puras**, *pure aims and (pure) virtues*.

d. When the nouns have different numbers the adjective is generally plural: **os soldados e o seu chefe cheios de coragem**, *the soldiers and their leader, full of courage*.

e. There may be a plural noun with singular adjectives expressing parts as, **as grammaticas portugueza, franceza e ingleza**.

PLURAL

40. Adjectives form their plurals like nouns: **bonito**, *handsome* (f. **bonita**), pl. **bonitos** (f. **bonitas**); **facil**, *easy*, pl. **faceis**. (For the various plural endings see § 20.)

FEMININE

41. Adjectives have the feminine in **a**, or remain unchanged according to the following rules:

a. Adjectives with the masculine ending in **o** change that vowel to **a**: **bello**, *fine*, f. **bella**.

b. Adjectives ending in **ão** either drop the **o**: as **são**, f. **sã**, or change the **ão** to **ona** as **chorão**, *chorona*; **sabi-chão**, *sabichona*; **valentão**, *valentona*.

c. Adjectives ending in **r** (except **particular**, *singular*, and comparatives which are unchanged) add **a**: **encanta-dor**, *charming*, f. **encantadora**.

d. Proper adjectives ending in **z** and **l** add **a**: **frances**, f. **franceza**, *French*; **hespanhol**, f. **hespanhola**, *Spanish*.

e. Those ending in **eu** change to **ea**: **hebreu**, f. **hebreia**, *Hebrew* (but **judeu** becomes **judia** and **sandeu** becomes **sandia**). Those ending in **u** add **a**: **cru**, f. **crua**; **nu**, f. **nua**.

f. Other adjectives have the same form in both genders: **facil**, m. f., *easy*; **feliz**, m. f., *happy*; **azul**, m. f., *blue*; **melhor**, m. f., *better*; **cortez**, m. f., *courteous*; **prudente**, m. f., *prudent*; **ruim**, m. f., *bad*.

g. The following, however, are *irregular*:

MASCULINE	FEMININE	MEANING
bom	boa	good
mau	má	bad

COMPARISON

(See Exercise XIII, page 133)

42. The regular comparative adjectives are formed by placing **mais**, *more*, or **menos**, *less*, before the positive: **escuro**, *dark*, **mais escuro**, *darker*, or **menos escuro**, *less dark*.

43. The relative superlative is formed by placing the definite article before the comparative form: **o mais escuro**, *the darkest*.

44. The absolute superlative is derived directly from the Latin and has the termination **imo**. The precise formation varies according to the termination of the positive from which it is derived:

I. When the positive ends in **al**, **il**, **r**, or **u**, add **issimo**: **natural**, **naturalissimo**; **habil**, **habilissimo**; **singular**, **singularissimo**; **cru**, **cruissimo**.

II. When the positive ends in **vel**, that ending becomes **bilissimo**: **notavel**, **notabilissimo**.

III. When the positive ends in **om** or **um**, the **m** is changed to **n** before the final **issimo**: **bom**, **bonissimo**; **commum**, **communissimo**.

IV. When the positive ends in **ão**, that termination becomes **anissimo**: **são**, **sanissimo**; but **christão**, **christianissimo**.

V. When the positive ends in **az**, **iz**, **oz**, the final **z** is changed to **c** before the **issimo**: **audaz**, **audacissimo**; **feliz**, **felicissimo**; **veloz**, **velocissimo**.

VI. When the positive ends in **e** or **o** these terminations change to **issimo**: **excelente**, **excelentissimo**; **alto**, **altissimo**.

a. Positives ending in **co** and **go** change those letters to **qu** and **gu** before **issimo** in order to retain the hard sounds: **rico**, **riquissimo**; **vago**, **vaguissimo**.

b. The following are exceptional absolute superlative forms derived from Latin roots:

acre	acerrimo	christão	christianissimo
amigo	amicissimo	cruel	crudelissimo
aspero	asperrimo	difficil	difficillimo
celebre	celeberrimo	doce	dulcissimo

facil	facillimo	pobre	pauperrimo (<i>coll.</i>
fiel	fidelissimo		poberrimo)
frio	frigidissimo	sabio	sapientissimo
livre	liberrimo	sagrado	sacratissimo
misero	miserrimo	salubre	saluberrimo
nobre	nobilissimo	similhante	simillimo

TABLE OF COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE	RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE
alto, high	mais alto, ¹ higher	altissimo, highest	o mais alto, the highest
grande, great	mais grande, ²	grandissimo	o mais grande
secco, dry	mais secco	sequissimo	o mais secco

c. In colloquial Portuguese certain superlative forms are used to strengthen an expression or statement, as **mesmissima cousa**, *precisely the same thing*. (See § 93.) One even hears such expressions as **coisissima nenhuma**, *not the slightest thing*, though, strictly speaking, a noun does not admit of such comparison. **Portuguesissimo** is sometimes used to mean *very thoroughly Portuguese*.³

d. The absolute superlative may also be expressed by the use of various adverbs, **mui** or **muito**, *very*, **bastante**, *quite*, or **summamente**, *exceedingly*.

e. The relative superlative takes **de**, *of*: **o mais valente de todos**, *the bravest of all*.

f. Comparatives of superiority or inferiority take **que**, **de que** and **do que**, *than*: **mais bello do que a rosa**, *more beautiful than the rose*. Certain other comparatives take

¹ Alto has also an irregular comparative superior.

² Grande has an irregular comparative maior.

³ A. R. Gonçalves Viana, *Ortografia Nacional*, page 167.

de: ha mais de vinte annos, menos de uma legua, more than twenty years ago, less than a league.

g. The forms **maior, greater, menor, smaller, peior, worse, melhor, better**, are followed by **que: maior que a serra, bigger than the mountain**; but the forms **superior, inferior, interior, and exterior** take **a, to**, instead of **que: elle é inferior a seu irmão, he is inferior to his brother.**

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS

45. Several irregular adjectives derive their comparative and their absolute superlative forms directly from the Latin, but the relative superlative is formed in the usual way by placing **o, the**, before the comparative.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE	RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE
bom, good	melhor ¹	optimo	o melhor
mau, bad	peior ¹	pessimo	o peior
grande, great	maior ²	maximo	o maior
alto, high	superior	supremo	o superior
baixo, low	inferior	infimo	o inferior
muito, much	mais		o mais
pequeno, small	menor ²	minimo	o menor
pouco, little	menos		o menos

AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ADJECTIVES

46. Augmentative and diminutive adjectives are formed like augmentative and diminutive nouns:

¹ The comparatives **mais bom** and **mais mau** are sometimes used, but they are falling into disuse.

² The expressions **o mais pequeno, the smallest**, and **o mais alto, the highest**, are also used; **mais grande** and **mais pequeno** are comparatives often used colloquially instead of **maior** and **menor**, but they are not good Portuguese.

novo, *new*, **novinho**, *quite new*. (For rules, see § 35, 36.) The adjectives, like the nouns, are often used as terms of endearment. **Bonitinho** from **bonito**, *pretty*, is often used to mean *quite pretty*, *very pretty*, or *pretty little dear*.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

47. In general the noun precedes the adjective: **homem trabalhador**, *a working man*.

48. This order may be inverted: **mau signal** or **signal mau**, *a bad sign*. This inversion, however, is not arbitrary, but is determined by emphasis, the rule for which cannot be fully stated but must be acquired by observation and practise.

49. In general the adjective precedes when it denotes a quality which necessarily belongs to the noun, and when the adjective and noun might almost be regarded as a compound word.

50. The adjective follows when it denotes a quality to which especial attention is directed; but when the attention is to be directed to the noun, and the adjective is of minor importance, the adjective precedes the noun.

51. The following cases illustrate the difference in meaning due to the position of the adjective:

boa noite, good night
certo dia, a certain day
certo relógio, a certain clock

noite boa, a fine night
dia certo, a fixed day
relógio certo, a clock that keeps
 good time

pobre homem , poor man!	homem pobre , a man who is poor
bom anno , a prosperous year	anno bom , New Year
santa casa , a hospital	casa santa , a sacred house
nosso padre , our priest	padre nosso , the Lord's prayer
simples homem , a mere man	homem simples , a plain man
grande homem , an eminent man	homem grande , a large man

a. In the cases cited the expressions are readily translatable, but in many instances the distinctions do not admit of such brief definitions. In the following cases the English translation given is inadequate and explanations are required that cannot be given briefly:

altos ceos and **ceos altos**, high heavens;
santos padres and **padres santos**, holy fathers;
primeira causa and **causa primeira**, first cause;
longos dias and **dias longos**, long days.

52. In certain cases inversions are not allowed. In the following instances, for example, the words must be in the order given as if they were compounds:

Deus padre, God the father;
estrella fixa, a fixed star;
mão direita, the right hand;
deputado federal, federal deputy (*congressman*);
Illustrissimo Senhor, Most illustrious Mr. —
codigo civil, the civil code.

53. The words **pouco**, *little*, and **muito**, *many*, *much*, when used as adjectives usually precede their nouns: **poucas cousas**, *a few things*; **ha poucos dias**, *a few days ago*; **muito barulho**, *much noise*.

54. The adjectives *hungry, thirsty, sleepy, and cold*, are expressed by the use of *estar com* and the nouns meaning *hunger, etc.*: *estou com fome, sede, somno, frio, I am hungry, thirsty, sleepy, cold.*

V. NUMERALS

(See Exercise XIV, page 134)

55.

THE CARDINALS

1 um, f. uma	30 trinta
2 dois, f. duas	40 quarenta
3 tres	50 cincoenta
4 quatro	60 sessenta
5 cinco	70 setenta
6 seis	80 oitenta
7 sete	90 noventa
8 oito	100 cem
9 nove	101 cento e um (or uma)
10 dez	102 cento e dois (or duas)
11 onze	200 duzentos, f. -as
12 doze	300 trezentos, f. -as
13 treze	400 quatrocentos, f. -as
14 quatorze	500 quinhentos, f. -as
15 quinze	600 seiscentos, f. -as
16 dezeseis	700 setecentos, f. -as
17 dezeseite	800 oitocentos, f. -as
18 dezoito	900 novecentos, f. -as
19 dezenove	1000 mil ¹
20 vinte	1001 mil e um (or uma)
21 vinte e um (or uma)	2000 dois (or duas) mil
22 vinte e dois (or duas)	1,000,000 um milhão

¹ The word *conto* which formerly meant a *million* in counting is only used with *reis*: *um conto de reis, a thousand milreis.*

56. The cardinal numbers have the same form for both genders except in the cases of **um, uma, one; dois, duas, two**, and those ending in **centos or centas**.

57. The cardinal numbers are often used in place of the ordinals, especially to denote the days of the month except **primeiro, the first**, as: **hoje é sete, to-day is the seventh; pagina vinte, page twenty; seculo dezoito for decimo oitavo seculo, the eighteenth century.**

58. Except when used in place of the ordinals the cardinals always precede the noun: **ha vinte dias, twenty days ago.**

THE ORDINALS

59. The ordinal numbers are variously derived:

1. By the use of the suffix **eiro**: **primeiro, first, terceiro, third.**

2. From the Latin forms: **segundo, second, sexto, sixth.**

3. By the use of the suffix **esimo**:¹ **vigesimo, twentieth; centesimo, hundredth.**

a. The ordinals have gender and number like other adjectives.

b. The ordinals are used either as nouns or as adjectives: **um sexto, a sixth, or uma sexta parte, a sixth part. Um segundo, however, is not used for a half, nor um terceiro, for a third, when fractions are meant. (See "Fractions," § 61.)**

¹ The **s** in **simo** from **vigesimo** onward is pronounced like **s**, not like **z**.

1 primeiro, first	16 decimo sexto
2 segundo, second	17 decimo setimo
3 terceiro, third, etc.	18 decimo oitavo
4 quarto	19 decimo nono
5 quinto	20 vigesimo
6 sexto	21 vigesimo primeiro
7 septimo <i>or</i> setimo	22 vigesimo segundo
8 oitavo	30 trigesimo
9 nono	40 quadragésimo
10 decimo	50 quinquagesimo
11 undecimo (decimo primeiro)	60 sexagesimo
12 duodecimo (decimo segundo)	70 septuagesimo
13 decimo terceiro	80 octogesimo
14 decimo quarto	90 nonagesimo
15 decimo quinto	100 centesimo

60. Inflection. — Of the cardinals *um*, *dois*, and multiples of *cento* (*duzentos*, *f. duzentas*) are treated as adjectives.

The ordinals are all treated as adjectives, except as indicated at § 59*b*.

61.**THE FRACTIONS**

$\frac{1}{2}$	{ metade: metade do dinheiro, half of the money
$\frac{1}{2}$	{ meio <i>or</i> meia: meia hora, half an hour
$\frac{1}{3}$	terço <i>or</i> terça: uma terça parte
$\frac{2}{3}$	dois terços <i>or</i> duas terças partes
$\frac{1}{4}$	um quarto <i>or</i> uma quarta parte
$\frac{3}{4}$	tres quartos
$\frac{1}{5}$	um quinto
$\frac{1}{6}$	um sexto

$\frac{1}{7}$ um setimo
 $\frac{1}{8}$ um oitavo
 $\frac{1}{9}$ um nono
 $\frac{1}{10}$ um decimo

a. In the reading of fractions above tenths the suffix **avo** (derived from the term **oitavo**) is used to express the divisor.

$\frac{1}{11}$ um onze avo or a undecima parte
 $\frac{2}{11}$ nove onze avos
 $\frac{1}{12}$ um doze avo
 $\frac{2}{20}$ um vinte avo
 $\frac{3}{20}$ treze vinte avos
 $\frac{41}{100}$ quarenta e um cincoenta e quatro avos
 $\frac{1}{100}$ um centesimo
 $\frac{1}{1000}$ um millesimo

62.

MULTIPLICATION

The word **vez**, *time*, is used with the cardinal numerals to express multiplication: **uma vez** or **simples**, *once*; **duas vezes**, *twice*; **tres vezes**, *three times*, etc. Example: **tres vezes tres são nove**, *three times three are nine*.

a. These expressions are also used: **dois tantos**, *twice as many*; **tres tantos**, *three times as many*; **outros tantos**, *as many more*.

b. *Proportionals*:

duplice, dobrado, dobro, duplo,	} double
--	----------

triple,	}	triple
triplice,		
triplicado,		
triplo,		
tres dobrado,		
tres dobro,		

quadruplo, quadruple
 decuplo, tenfold
 centuplo, a hundred fold
 uma duzia, a dozen
 vintena, a score
 centenaes, hundreds
 milhares, thousands
 multiplo, many times

63.

NUMERAL SUBSTANTIVES

Cento, a hundred, mil, a thousand, milheiro, thousand, the fractions and the proportional numbers are treated as substantives.

64.

IDIOMS

The following are illustrations of idioms in common use in connection with the numerals.

Que horas são, what time is it?

São tres e um quarto, it is quarter past three.

É uma hora, it is one o'clock.

Faltam vinte para tres (*colloq.*), it lacks twenty minutes of three.

A quantos estamos hoje do mez? what day of the month is it?

Hoje é dia quinze *or* **hoje é quinze**, this is the fifteenth.
Quantas leguas são d'aqui á cidade? how many leagues
 is it from here to the city?

São duas, it is two.

Que idade tem o senhor? how old are you? (*literally*,
 what age has the gentleman?)

Tenho vinte e tantos annos, I am twenty odd years
 old.

Oito dias, a week (*literally*, eight days).

Quinze dias, a fortnight (*literally*, fifteen days).

Ha vinte annos, twenty years ago, *also* these twenty
 years.

Ha cousa de vinte annos, some (about) twenty years
 ago.

Ha duas horas, two hours ago, *and* these two hours.

D'aqui a quinze dias, a fortnight hence.

The days of the week are numbered from Monday
 to Friday as follows:

Domingo	Sunday
Segunda-feira	Monday
Terça-feira	Tuesday
Quarta-feira	Wednesday
Quinta-feira	Thursday
Sexta-feira	Friday
Sabbado	Saturday

VI. PRONOUNS

PERSONALS

(See Exercise XV, page 135)

65. There are the usual three personal pronouns, but in Portuguese the third person is generally used in place of the second in direct address, with the exceptions noted below. Strictly speaking there is no declension in Portuguese; the personal pronouns, however, retain, in all persons, so many traces of their Latin declensions that they have the appearance of being declined, and are so given by some grammarians. The objective forms vary according as they are used with or without prepositions.

SUBJECT FORMS		OBJECTIVE FORMS			
		WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS	WITH PREPOSITIONS		
1st per.	{ eu	I	me	mim or me,	me
	{ nós	we	nos	migo nós, nosco	us
2d per.	{ tu	thou	te	ti or te, tigo	thee
	{ vós	you, ye	vos	vós, vosco	ye
3d per.	{ elle, ella	he, she, it	o, a, lo, la, ¹ lhe	elle, ella	him, her, it
	{ elles, ellas	they	os, as, los, las, ¹ lhes	elles, ellas	them
	{ (reflexive)		se	si or se, sigo	them- selves

¹ These are from the Latin pronoun *illo* and are not to be confused with the definite article which has the same forms. There is a tendency to avoid the use of *o*, so that one often hears such expres-

a. **Lhe**, **lhes**, *to him, to her, to it, to them* are always indirect or dative forms.

b. **O**, **a**, **lo**, **la**, **os**, **as**, **los**, and **las** are always direct objective or accusative forms.

c. Those used with prepositions admit of any preposition, except that when the preposition is **com**, *with*, the forms **migo**, **tigo**, **nosco**, **vosco**, and **sigo** only are used, as **commigo**, *with me*, **comtigo**, *with thee*, etc.

d. **Elle**, **ella**, etc., with the preposition **de**, *of*, are contracted to **delle**, **della**, etc.; with **em**, *in*, they are contracted to **nelle**, **nella**, etc.

66. Use of the Third Person. — In address, the third person is commonly used except to close friends, relatives, children, and domestics when **tu** may be employed. Persons may be addressed, according to circumstances, as **Vossa Excellencia**, *Your Excellency*, **Vossa Senhoria**, *Your lordship*, **Vossa mercê**, *Your mercy, your grace*, **Você**, a common abbreviation of **Vossa mercê**, but one to be used only in cases of extreme familiarity, or as **Senhor**, *Mr.*, and **Senhora**, *madam*, or *Mrs.*

a. Until one becomes familiar with the use of these terms the safest rule is to use **Senhor** and **Senhora**.

b. In writing, these words are abbreviated as indicated at § 147.

c. Ordinarily **eu**, *I*, is not used as in English, but is sometimes placed before or even after the verb for the

sions as **va chamar elle** instead of **va chama-lo**; or **visitar-lhe** instead of **visita-lo**. A Brazilian scholar observes: "**assim o pobre o vai perdendo terreno.**"

sake of emphasis or clearness. The same is true of **tu**, *thou*, **elle**, *he*, **ella**, *she*, **nos**, *we*. **Para ti sonhava eu sonhos de gloria**, *for thee I dreamed dreams of glory*.

d. **Vos**, *you*, is only used in very formal discourses, and as a vocative in prayers, etc. It is not used colloquially as in English. (See § 66.) **Tu**, *thou*, is also used as a vocative.

REFLEXIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

67. Reflexive. — The reflexive forms of the personal pronouns are:

me , a mim	me, to me
te , a ti	thee, to thee
se , a si	himself, to himself
nos , a nós	us, to us
vos , a vós	you, to you
se , a si	themselves, to themselves

THIRD PERSON

Singular and Plural

Direct object	se	himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Indirect object	si , se	to himself, herself, itself, or themselves
	comsigo	with himself, herself, itself, themselves

68. Duplication. — Duplication is common in classic Portuguese. By its use attention is redirected to an idea. **Que me importa a mim a gloria?** *In what does glory concern me?* or *what is glory to me?* **Aconteceu-me a mim**, *it happened to me*.

Such expressions do not admit of literal translations into English.

69. Syntax of the Personal Pronouns.¹ — The personal pronouns are used both as direct and indirect objects:

Direct: **elle me reprehendeu**, he reprehended me.

Indirect: **elle me deu o livro**, he gave me the book.

70. The same thing occurs with the other pronouns, except that in the third person the indirect object is expressed by **lhe**, while the direct is **o**, **a**, **os**, and **as**.

Direct: **reprehendeu-o**, he reprehended him.

Indirect: **deu-lhe o livro**, he gave him (or her) the book.

71. The direct object is used after transitive verbs, the indirect after intransitives: **vi-o**, *I saw him*, **obedeci-lhe**, *I obeyed him (or her)*.

72. The pronouns **me**, **te**, **se**, **lhe**, **nos**, **vos**, and **o** are called *proclitic*, *mesoclitic*, or *enclitic* according

¹ Some grammarians make a sort of bugbear of the position of the pronouns. This is due in part, at least, to the somewhat different usages in Portugal and Brazil. In Portugal, for example, they would say: **espero que me faça o favor**, *I hope you can do me the favor*, and **não se lembrou do recado**, *he did not remember the message*; while in Brazil they might use these identical expressions or they might say **espero que faça me o favor** and **não lembrou-se do recado**. However, aside from the simple rules here given, the position of the pronoun is a matter of phonetics rather than of rules of grammar.

as they precede, are inserted within, or follow the verb.

a. They precede the verb (are proclitic):

1. In negative sentences: **não me fale; não o creio.**
2. In phrases depending upon **que, o qual, quem, cujo: quem o chamou; a mulher que se ama.**
3. In certain popular expressions: **Deus me livre; o diabo te leve.**
4. When used with the conjunctions **que, porque, and pois que**, the rule has many exceptions.

b. They are inserted in the verb between the stem and termination (are mesoclitic) in the future indicative and conditional: **dir-lhe-ei**, *I will tell him*, instead of **direi-lhe**; **dir-se-ia**, instead of **diria-se**, *it would be said*.

c. They always follow the verb (are enclitic) at the beginning of a phrase: **resta-me agradecer-lhe; diga-me; faça-me o favor.**

d. In the mesoclitics and enclitics the pronoun is separated from the verb by a hyphen or hyphens.

e. The enclitics do not affect the position of the accents of the verbs.

73. When two pronouns come before a verb, the subject precedes: **mandou que tu lhe entregasse o livro**, *he directed that you should give him the book.*

74. **Se** and **si** refer to the subject: **Pedro falou de si**, *Pedro spoke of himself*. **Você quer tudo para si**, *you want everything for yourself*. **Leve a espingarda consigo**, *take the gun with you*. (For the use of the reflexive pronoun with verbs see § 126.)

75. Comparison. — After terms of comparison the nominative pronoun is used: **mais serio que eu**, *more serious than I*.

POSSESSIVES

(See Exercise XVI, page 136)

76. The possessive pronouns are inflected like adjectives and agree in gender and number with the object possessed. They all take **a** in the feminine and **s** in the plural.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		ENGLISH
MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE	
meu	minha	meus	minhas	my, mine
teu	tua	teus	tuas	thy, thine
seu	sua	seus	suas	{ his, her, hers its, their theirs
nosso	nossa	nossos	nossas	our, ours
vosso	vossa	vossos	vossas	your, yours

77. Inasmuch as the third person is used in direct address, **seu**, **sua**, **seus**, and **suas** are generally used in place of **vosso**, etc., for *your* and *yours*: **a casa é sua**, *the house is yours*.

78. Possession is also expressed by the use of a preposition as **a casa é d'elle**, *the house is his*; **a casa é d'elles**, *the house is theirs*.

79. The place of the possessive is before the noun as in English: **meu cavallo**, *my horse*.

80. In certain cases the possessive placed after the noun is equivalent to the personal pronoun with **de**: **noticias tuas** (*de ti*), *news of (about) you*. Important distinctions of this kind are illustrated by the example: **saudades tuas** means **saudades** for you, while **tuas saudades** means the **saudades** you have for some one else.

81. Possessives are not used with parts of the body as in English: **cortou-me o braço**, *he cut my arm*, is used instead of **cortou meu braço**. In some cases the possessives are omitted as in English, as: **venho de casa** is used instead of **venho de minha casa**, *I come from home*; **vou para casa**, *I am going home*.

82. At the same time the bold use of the possessive is occasionally emphatic: **estou na minha casa**, *I am in my own house*; **deixa-me com a minha dôr**, *leave me with my grief*.

83. The possessive **seu, sua, seus, suas**, *his, her or your*, is used also idiomatically and colloquially to express uncertain value or quantity: **tem seus vinte annos**, *he (or she) is about twenty years old*.

The possessives may be replaced by various forms of the personal pronouns, and sometimes such expressions are considered more elegant.

(For the use of the article before possessives see § 16.)

DEMONSTRATIVES

(See Exercise XVII, page 137)

84. The demonstrative pronouns may be used either with or without their nouns. When used with them they precede the nouns, agreeing with them in gender and number.

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		ENGLISH
MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE	
este	esta	estes	estas	} this } these
esse	essa	esses	essas	
aquelle	aquella	aquelles	aquellas	that, those

85. *Isso*, *isto*, and *aquillo* are neutral forms of the demonstratives used to refer to a preceding idea, expression, or subject, and may be regarded as equivalents of *essa cousa* or *essas cousas*, *esta cousa*, *aquella cousa*. They have neither feminine nor plural forms, nor are they used to refer to persons or animals.

86. The difference between *este* and *esse* in their various forms is that the first is used to refer to that which is near the speaker, while the second refers to that which is near the person addressed.

87. The forms *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, are identical with the definite articles in forms, sounds, and origins. They are used as the equivalents of *aquelle*, *aquella*, *aquelles*, *aquellas* when followed by a determining expression: *a provincia de Minho é a que tem mais vegetação entre as de Portugal*. Literally, *the pro-*

vince of Minho is that which has most vegetation among those of Portugal.

88. When these forms are preceded by the preposition **a** they combine with it forming **ao**, **aos**, **á**, and **às** as do the definite articles. Preceded by **em** they similarly form **no**, **na**, **nos**, **nas**, and preceded by **per** they form **pelo**, **pela**, **pelos**, and **pelas**.

DETERMINATIVES

89. The determinatives have gender and number except **tal** which has no gender distinction:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE	ENGLISH
outro	outra	outros	outras	other
mesmo	mesma	mesmos	mesmas	same, self
tanto	tanta	tantos	tantas	so many, as many
tal	tal	taes	taes	such

Outrem is an invariable form meaning **outra** **pessoa** or **outras** **pessoas**.

90. The demonstrative pronouns **este**, **esse**, **aquelle**, etc., with **outro** form **est'outro**, **ess'outro**, **aquell'outro** with the corresponding feminine and plural forms.

91. **Um e outro** (literally *one and other*), means *both*.

92. **Mesmo** means *same* and *self* as here illustrated: **a mesma coisa**, *the same thing*; **o mesmo homem**, *the same man*. It is used in connection with the personal pronouns to mean *self*: **eu mesmo**, *I my-*

self, ella mesma, she herself; elles mesmos, they themselves, etc.

It is also used in such expressions as *é mesmo, that is true, it is just so.*

93. *Mesmíssimo* is an augmentative form of *mesmo* meaning *precisely or exactly the same; é a mesmíssima cousa, it is precisely the same thing.*

Um tal means *such a one. Que tal? how is this? what do you think of this? Tal qual* means *just so. É tal qual, it is just so, it is just as you say; não ha tal, it is not true, it is no such thing; não ha tal lugar, there is no such place.*

94. *Fulano de tal* is a name used for any fictitious person; it is often equivalent to the English *John Doe* or to *Mr. What's-his-name*. *Fuão, Beltrano, and Sicrano* are similarly used.

INTERROGATIVES

(See Exercise XVIII, page 138)

95. The interrogatives are:

que? o que? what?	que homens? what men?
quem? who?	quem é? who is it?
qual? which?	qual d'elles? which of them?

It is not considered elegant nowadays to begin an interrogation with *o que*. *Que tem? what have you? (Not o que tem?)*

RELATIVES

(See Exercise XIX, page 139)

96. Of the relative pronouns **quem** refers to persons only; the other forms refer to either persons or things. They are

que, who, what, that (*no gender*)

quem, who, whom

qual, *pl. quaes*, which

cujo, *f. cuja, pl. cujos, cujas*, whose

97. **O que**, **o qual**, **a qual**, **os quaes**, and **as quaes**, literally, *the which*, mean *what* or *that*. These latter forms are used when the antecedent needs to be made clear or prominent. **A gloria de Deus a qual não se pôde escurecer**, *the glory of God which cannot*, etc. **O livro que está lendo**, *the book you are reading*; but **o livro da bibliotheca o qual está lendo**, *the book of the library (the) which you are reading*.

98. Where **quem** would follow **sem**, **o qual** is used instead for the sake of euphony: **sem o qual não deve**, *without which you should not*.

99. **Cujo** is equivalent to **do qual**, and is followed immediately by the object possessed: **O soldado cujo cavallo foi morto**, *the soldier whose horse was killed*.

a. **Cujo** without antecedent and the object possessed is a classic but archaic form of expression: **cujo é esta casa?** *whose house is this?* Instead one would now say: **de quem é esta casa?** Literally, *of whom is this house?*

INDEFINITE

(See Exercise XX, page 140)

100. The indefinite pronouns may be classified as nouns or adjectives.

a. The *nouns* are:

al (*invariable*), something else, the rest. (*But little used.*)

alguem (*invariable*), some one

algo, something, anything

nada (*invariable*), nothing

nenhum (*f. nenhuma, pl. nenhuns*), neither

ninguem (*invariable*), no one

qualquer, *pl. quaes-quer*, either, whichever

quemquer, anybody

tudo (*invariable*), all

uns, *f. umas*, some

b. **Algo** when used as a pronoun refers to things and means **alguma cousa**. It is sometimes used as an adverb meaning **algum tanto**: **ele está algo doente**, *he is somewhat ill*.

c. **Tudo** is a neutral form of **todo**. When followed by **que** it requires the definite article: **tudo o que elle disse**.

d. **Nenhum** may be used with an affirmative sense, and is equivalent to **qualquer** in the expression **mais que nenhum**, *more than any one*.

e. A negative is strengthened by doubling the negation: **não sei nada**, *I know nothing*; **não diz nada**, *he says nothing*.

f. The *adjectives* are:

algum (*f. alguma, pl. alguns, algumas*), some, no

cada (*um, uma*); **cada qual** (*sing. only*), each, every

certo (f. *certa*, pl. *certos*, -as), certain

muito (f. -a, pl. *muitos*, -as), many

outro (f. *outra*, pl. *outros*, -as), other

pouco (f. -a, pl. *poucos*, -as), few, little

***quanto** (f. -a, pl. *quantos*, -as), how much, how many,
as much as

***tanto** (f. -a, pl. *tantos*, -as), so much

todo (f. -a, pl. *todos*, -as), all, every

g. ***Quanto** is used in correlation with **tanto** to mean *as much as*. **Faço tanto quanto qualquer outro**, *I do as much as any one else*. **Quanto pagou?** *how much did you pay?* **Quantas vezes foi lá?** *how often did you go there?* **Quanto antes**, *as soon as possible*.

h. **Todo** with the article means *the whole*; without the article it means *every*; **toda cidade**, *every city*; **toda a cidade**, *all of the city*. It is sometimes used as an adverb but retains its gender for the sake of euphony: **ella está toda molhada**.

i. **Em quanto** means *while*. **Espera em quanto eu tiro uma vista**, *wait while I take a view*.

j. **Cada qual** and **cada um** have approximately the same meaning. **Cada qual** stands next to the verb, however, **cada um** does not: **cada um dos soldados andava** or **cada qual andava**, *each (of the soldiers) walked*.

101. When a proposition has a negative sense either **algum** may be placed after, or **nenhum** before the noun:

or { **homem algum poderá saber** } no man shall know
 { **nenhum homem poderá saber** }

The first sentence is more emphatic than the second.

102. Certain idiomatic expressions have meanings analogous to those of the indefinite pronouns:

seja quem for	}	be who it may
seja qual for		
fosse quem fosse	}	whoever it might be
quem quer que fosse		
quem quer que seja	}	whoever it may be
o que quer que é		

a. **De** and **de que** are often used in the sense of *something*; **tenho de que comer e de beber**, *I have something to eat and to drink*.

b. The expression **não ha de que** used in reply to **obrigado**, **muito obrigado**, etc., is equivalent to the English *not at all* or the French *pas de quoi*.

VII. VERBS

103. The Portuguese verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*, *reflexive*, or *impersonal*. They have *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *number*, and *person*.

CONJUGATIONS

104. The verbs have three conjugations which are distinguished by the endings of the infinitives.

EXAMPLE		
	ENDING	INFINITIVE
First conjugation:	—ar	andar
Second conjugation:	—er	receber
Third conjugation:	—ir	punir
		MEANING
		to walk
		to receive
		to punish

105. Regular and Irregular Verbs. — Those verbs which are conjugated like one of the three types are called *regular*; those which are not so conjugated, or lack some of the parts, are called *irregular* verbs.

GENERAL TERMINATIONS OF THE REGULAR VERBS

(See Exercise XXI, page 141)

106. The following are the terminations of all the forms of the regular verbs. These are to be added to the roots of the verbs, except in the cases of the *future* and *conditional* of the indicative where the infinitive is used as the root.

TENSES	INDICATIVE MOOD		
	1ST CONJUG.	2D CONJUG.	3D CONJUG.
<i>Present</i>	o	o	o
	as	es	es
	a	e	e
	amos	emos	imos
	aes	éis	is
	am ¹	em	em
<i>Imperfect</i>	ava	ia	ia
	avas	ias	ias
	ava	ia	ia
	avamos	iamos	iamos
	aveis	ieis	ieis
	avam ¹	iam	iam
<i>Preterit</i>	ei	i	i
	aste	este	iste
	ou	eu	iu
	amos	emos	imos
	astes	estes	istes
	áram ¹	êram	iram

¹ On the ending *am* and *ão* see § 96 foot-note and § 108.

TENSES	1ST CONJUG.	2D CONJUG.	3D CONJUG.
<i>Future</i>	{ ei	ei	ei
	{ ás	ás	ás
	{ á	á	á
	{ emos	emos	emos
	{ eis	eis	eis
	{ ão ¹	ão	ão

The future endings are added to the *infinitive*.

<i>Conditional</i>	{ ia	ia	ia
	{ ias	ias	ias
	{ ia	ia	ia
	{ íamos	íamos	íamos
	{ íeis	íeis	íeis
	{ íam	íam	íam

The conditional endings are added to the *infinitive*.

<i>Pluperfect</i>	{ ara	era	ira
	{ aras	eras	iras
	{ ara	era	ira
	{ aramos	eramos	iramos
	{ areis	ereis	irais
	{ aram ¹	eram	iram

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Present</i>	{ e	a	a
	{ es	as	as
	{ e	a	a
	{ emos	ámos	ámos
	{ eis	aes	aes
	{ em	am	am
<i>Imperfect</i>	{ asse	esse	isse
	{ asses	esses	isses
	{ asse	esse	isse
	{ assemos	êssemos	issemos
	{ asseis	esseis	isseis
	{ assem	essem	issem

¹ On the ending am and ão see § 9b foot-note and § 108.

TENSES	1ST CONJUG.	2D CONJUG.	3D CONJUG.
<i>Future</i>	{ ar	er	ir
	{ ares	eres	ires
	{ ar	er	ir
	{ armos	ermos	irmos
	{ ardes	erdes	irdes
	{ arem	erem	irem

IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Present</i>	{ a	e	e
	{ ae	ei	i

INFINITIVE

<i>Impersonal</i>	ar	er	ir
<i>Personal</i>	{ ar	er	ir
	{ ares	eres	ires
	{ ar	er	ir
	{ armos	ermos	irmos
	{ ardes	erdes	irdes
	{ arem	erem	irem

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	ando	endo	indo
<i>Past Part.</i>	ado	ido	ido

MODEL VERBS

107. The tone vowels in this table are indicated by italics.

INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	{ <i>falo</i> (I speak)	<i>devo</i> (I owe)	<i>parto</i> (I depart)
	falas	deves	partes
	fala	deve	parte
	falamos	devemos	partimos
	falaes	deveis	partis
	falam	devem	partem

<i>Imperfect</i> ¹	{	falava (I spoke	devia (I owed	partia (I departed
		falavas or was	devias or was	partias or was
		falava speaking)	devia owing)	partia depart-
		falavamos	deviamos	partiamos ing)
		falaveis	devieis	partieis
		falavam	deviam	partiam
<i>Preterit</i> ¹	{	falei (I spoke	devi (I owed)	parti (I de-
		falaste or have	deveste	partiste parted)
		falou spoken)	deveu	partiu
		falámos	devemos	partimos
		falastes	devestes	partistes
		falaram	deveram	partiram
<i>Future</i>	{	falarei (I shall	deverei (I shall	partirei (I shall
		falarás speak)	deverás owe)	partirás depart)
		falará	deverá	partirá
		falaremos	deveremos	partiremos
		falareis	devereis	partireis
		falarão	deverão	partirão
<i>Condi- tional</i>	{	falaria (I should	deveria (I should	partiria (I should
		falarías or would	deverías or	partirías or
		falaria speak)	deveria would	partiria would
		falaríamos	deveríamos owe)	partiríamos de-
		falarieis	deverieis	partirieis part)
		falariam	deveriam	partiriam
<i>Pluper- fect</i>	{	falára (I had	devêra (I had	partira (I had
		faláras spoken)	devêras owed)	partiras departed)
		falára	devêra	partira
		faláramos	devêramos	partiramos
		faláreis	devêreis	partireis
		faláram	devêram	partiram

¹ The English *perfect* tense is represented by the *imperfect* and *preterit* of the Portuguese, and the discriminate use of these tenses in the Portuguese is one of the greatest difficulties for English speaking persons.

SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive is to be translated into English according to the context, by *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*. When it is used in place of the imperative it is translated as a command or request.

<i>Present</i>	{	fale (I may faleis speak)	deva (I may devas owe)	parta (I may partas depart)
		fale	deva	parta
		falemos	devamos	partamos
		faleis	devaes	partaes
		falem	devam	partam
<i>Imperfect</i>	{	falasse (I should falasse speak)	devesse (I should devesse owe)	partisse (I should partisses depart)
		falasse	devesse	partisse
		falassemos	devêssemos	partissemos
		falasseis	devesseis	partisseis
		falassem	devessem	partissem
<i>Future</i>	{	falar (I should falares speak)	dever (I should deveres owe)	partir (I should partires depart)
		falar	dever	partir
		falaremos	devermos	partirmos
		falardes	deverdes	partirdes
		falarem	deverem	partirem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	{	fala (speak)	deve (owe)	parte (depart)
		falae (pl.)	devei	parti

INFINITIVE

<i>Impersonal</i>	{	falar (to speak)	dever (to owe)	partir (to depart)
-------------------	---	------------------	----------------	--------------------

<i>Personal</i>	{	falar	dever	partir
		falares	deveres	partires
		falar	dever	partir
		falarmos	devermos	partirmos
		falardes	deverdes	partirdes
		falarem	deverem	partirem

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres. Part.</i> ¹	falando (speaking)	devendo (owing)	partindo (departing)
<i>Past Part.</i>	falado (spoken)	devido (owed)	partido (departed)

OBSERVATIONS ON THE REGULAR VERBS

(See Exercise XXII, page 142)

108. Formerly the third person plural of the indicative present of the first conjugation ended in **ão**; now it is written **am**; only the future indicative retains the **ão** ending except in short words where the **ão** is the predominant sound as **são, dão, hão**.

The following changes (*a.* to *g.*) are required by the necessity of preserving the hard or soft sounds.

Verbs ending in

a. **car** change the **c** to **qu** before **e**: **arrancar**, pret. **arranquei**, pres. sub. **arranque**; **ficar**, pret. **fiquei**.

b. **gar** change the **g** to **gu** before **e**: **apagar**, **apague**; **jogar**, **jogue**; **cegar**, pret. **ceguei**; **julgar**, pret. **julguei**.

c. **ger** and **gir** change the **g** to **j** before **o** and **a**: **abran-ger**, **abranjo**; **fugir**, **fujo**, **fuja**.

d. **guer** and **guir** drop the **u** before **a** and **o**: **erguer**, **ergo**; **distinguir**, **distingo** (except **arguir**).

e. **çar** drop the cedilla before **e**: **alcançar**, **alcance**.

¹ Some grammarians call this the gerund.

f. **cer** change **c** to **ç** before **a** and **o**: **adoecer**, **adoeço**, **adoeça**.

g. In the third conjugation verbs that have **u** in the final syllables change it to **o** in the present:

consumo ,	3d per.	consome
destruo ,	" "	destroe
acudo ,	" "	acode
fujo ,	" "	foge
cuspo ,	" "	cospe
engulo ,	" "	engole
tusso ,	" "	tosse
bulo ,	" "	bole
cubro ,	" "	cobre
subo ,	" "	sobe
sumo ,	" "	some

Analogous changes are made in the first person of the present indicative of the following: **domir** becomes **durmo**; **servir**, **sirvo**; **seguir**, **sigo**; **impedir** (formerly **impido**, now) **impeço**.

AUXILIARY VERBS

(See Exercise XXIII, page 143)

109. The principal auxiliary verbs are **ter**, *to have*, and **haver**, **ser**, and **estar**, *to be*. These verbs, however, are not used exclusively as auxiliaries, while other verbs are often used as such, especially **andar** and **ir**, *to go*, and **vir**, *to come*. **Ando procurando uma casa**, *I am looking for a house*.

a. **Ter** and **haver** when used with an infinitive require the preposition **de**: **tenho de escrever**, or **hei de escrever**,

I have to write. In such uses of these verbs, **ter** shows that the thing is done by necessity, as **temos de morrer**, *we must die*; while **haver** is used to indicate that it will be done with certainty, or the resolution to do it.

Ter sometimes means *to have* in the sense of possession, as **tenho um cavallo**, *I have a horse*; **teve razão**, *he had reason* or *he was right*, but it is also used as an auxiliary verb just as it is in English.

b. These particular auxiliaries are often used in place of the regular future forms of the verbs: **hei-de ir** for **irei**, **ha-de ir** for **irá**, etc. The hyphen is not always used before the **de**; it may be written **ha de ir**.

c. In the use of **haver** with the preposition **de** the latter is joined to the verb form: **hei-de escrever**; **hão-de dizer**.

d. In general **ter** is used more than **haver**.

e. When **andar** is used as an auxiliary it is either followed by the present participle of another verb or by **a** and the infinitive, and conveys the idea that the subject of the first verb constantly practises the action implied by the second: **José anda vadeando** or **José anda a vadear** means that *José is idling constantly*.

f. The verbs **ir** and **vir** followed by the present participle of another verb expresses the gradual realization of the action of the second verb: **vou acabando**, *I am gradually finishing*, *I am nearing the end*.

g. The verb **ir** followed by the infinitive expresses immediate future action: **vou passear**, *I am going to take a walk*.

h. **Haver** is generally defined as meaning *to have*, but in the third person it is more nearly equivalent to the verb *to be*. For example: **não ha agua**, *there is no water*;

houve um temporal, *there was a storm*; **si houvesse tempo**, *if there were time*.

i. **Ser** means *to be* in a permanent sense: **sou Americano**, *I am an American*. It is used as an auxiliary, but only in the passive voice: **a terra é cultivada**, *the land is cultivated*.¹

j. **Estar** means *to be*, in a transitory or temporary sense: **estou aqui**, *I am here*; **estou com fome**, *I am hungry*; **estou doente**, *I am ill*; but **sou doente** means *I am ill beyond recovery*, that is, *I am an invalid*. **Estou cego**, *I am blind (temporarily)*; **sou cego**, *I am blind (permanently)*.

k. **Estar** is sometimes used to indicate nearness in point of time where **ser** indicates remoteness, as **elle está morto** means *he has just died*, whereas **elle é morto** implies that *he died long ago*. Sometimes either **ser** or **estar** can be used with equal propriety as: **é claro que** or **está claro que**, *it is evident that . . .*

l. The verb **estar** followed by the preposition **a** or **para** and an infinitive means that the action of the second verb is to take place shortly: **Carlos está para casar**, *Charles is on the point of marrying*; **o vapor está a partir**, *the steamer is about to start*.

m. **Estar a** indicates an act in process at the time of the remark: **ha mais de meia hora está aquelle menino a chorar**, *for more than half an hour that boy has been crying*.

n. **Vir** followed by the preposition **a** and an infinitive expresses the same idea as would be expressed by the second verb and **por fim**: **estas palavras veem a significar** or **estas palavras por fim significam**, *in the end these words mean, or these words amount to*.

¹ For its use in expressing the time of day see § 64.

o. The English auxiliary *do* has no equivalent in Portuguese.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

	Ter¹ <i>to have</i>	Haver¹ <i>to be</i> <i>to have</i>	Ser² <i>to be</i>	Estar¹ <i>to be</i>
INDICATIVE				
<i>Present</i>	tenho (I have)	hei	sou (I am)	estou (I am)
	tens	has	és	estas
	tem	ha	é ⁴	está
	temos	havemos ³	somos	estamos
	tendes	haveis	sois	estaeis
	têm	hão	são ⁵	estão
<i>Imperfect</i>	tinha (I had)	havia	era (I was)	estava (I was)
	tinhas	havas	eras	estavas
	tinha	havia	era	estava
	tinhamos	havíamos	éramos	estávamos
	tinheis	havíeis	ereis	estaveis
	tinham	havam	eram	estavam
<i>Preterit</i>	tive (I had)	houve	fui (I was)	estive (I was)
	tiveste	houveste	foste	estiveste
	teve	houve	foi	estive
	tivemos	houvemos	fomos	estivemos
	tivestes	houvestes	fostes	estivestes
	tiveram	houveram	foram	estiveram

¹ For meanings see § 109.

² *Ser* is an auxiliary only in the passive voice. It is called a mixed verb on account of its being made up of different verbs: *sou*, *somos* (Lat. *sum*, etc.); *era*, *eramos* (Lat. *eram*); *fui*, *fomos* (Lat. *fui*); *serei*, *seria*, *seja* (Lat. *sedere*).

³ Contracted to *hemos*, *heis*.

⁴ This was formerly written *he*.

⁵ Formerly written *sam*.

<i>Future</i>	{	terei	haverêi	serei	estarei
		terás	haverás	serás	estarás
		terá	haverá	será	estará
		teremos	haveremos	seremos	estaremos
		tereis	haveréis	sereis	estareis
		terão	haverão	serão	estarão

<i>Conditional¹</i>	{	teria	haveria ²	seria	estaria
		terias	haverias	serias	estarias
		teria	haveria	seria	estaria
		teríamos	haveríamos	seríamos	estariamos
		terieis	haverieis	serieis	estarieis
		teriam	haveriam	seriam	estariam

<i>Pluperfect¹</i>	{	tivera	houvera	fôra	estivera
		tiveras	houveras	fôras	estiveras
		tivera	houvera	fôra	estivera
		tiveramos	houvéramos	foramos	estiveramos
		tiveréis	houveréis	foreis	estiveréis
		tiveram	houveram	foram	estiveram

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	{	tenha	haja	seja	esteja
		tenhas	hajas	sejas	estejas
		tenha	haja	seja	esteja
		tenhamos	hajamos	sejamos	estejamos
		tenhaes	hajaes	sejaes	estejaes
		tenham	hajam	sejam	estejam

<i>Imperfect</i>	{	tivesse	houvesse	fosse	estivesse
		tivesses	houvesse	fosses	estivesses
		tivesse	houvesse	fosse	estivesse
		tivéssemos	houvéssemos	fossemos	estivéssemos
		tivesseis	houvesseis	fosseis	estivesseis
		tivessem	houvessem	fossem	estivessem

¹ See note on page 71 on the conditional and pluperfect.² Contracted to *hia*, etc.

<i>Future</i>	{	tiver	houver	fôr	estiver
		tiveres	houveres	fôres	estiveres
		tiver	houver	fôr	estiver
		tivermos	houvermos	fôrmos	estivermos
		tiverdes	houverdes	fôrdes	estiverdes
		tiverem	houverem	fôrem	estiverem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	{	(sing.) tem	ha	sê	esta
		(pl.) tende	havei	sêde	estae

INFINITIVE

<i>Imper- sonal</i>	}	ter	haver	ser	estar
<i>Per- sonal</i>	{	ter	haver	ser	estar
		teres	haveres	seres	estares
		ter	haver	ser	estar
		termos	havermos	sermos	estarmos
		terdes	haverdes	serdes	estardes
		terem	haverem	serem	estarem

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres. Part.</i> tendo	havendo	sendo	estando
<i>Past Part.</i> tido	havido	sido	estado

IRREGULAR VERBS

(See Exercise XXIV, page 144)

110. Some of the irregular verbs are so nearly regular that they are omitted from the following reference list of the verbs most commonly regarded as irregular. Such are verbs ending in *ahir* and *air*. These follow the succeeding models in the Present Indicative and Subjunctive but are otherwise regular.

<i>Sahir, to go out</i>	<i>Esvair, to disperse</i>
INDICATIVE PRESENT	INDICATIVE PRESENT
saio	esvaio
saes	esvais
sae	esvae
sahimos	esvaimos
sahis	esvais
saem	esváem
SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
saia	esvaia
saías	esvais
saia	esvaia
saiâmos	esvaiâmos
saiaes	esvaiaes
saiam	esváiam

a. NOTE. — The verbs *sahir*, *cahir*, and their compounds are generally written with **h** in those forms in which the **sa** and **ca** are followed by accented **i** or **ir**, in which cases the **h** is used to indicate that the **a** and **i** do not form diphthongs.

b. Verbs ending in *uzir* take **uz** instead of **use** in the third person of the present indicative: *produzir*, to produce, *produz*; *reluzir*, to shine, *reluz*.

Reference List of the Irregular Parts of Irregular Verbs

111.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Dar, to give.

Indic. Pres. dou, das, da, damos, daes, dão.

Prel. dei, deste, deu, demos, destes, déram.

Plup. déra, déras, etc.

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	dê, dês, dê, dêmos, deis, dêem.
<i>Imp.</i>	dêsse, dêsses, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	dêr, dêres, dêr, dermos, derdes, derem.

112. SECOND CONJUGATION

Caber, to hold, contain.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	caibo, cabes, cabe, cabemos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	coube, coubeste, coube, coubemos, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	coubera, couberas, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	caiba, caibas, caibâmos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	coubesse, coubesses, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	couber, couberes, etc.

Crer, to believe.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	creio, crês, crê, cremos, credes, creem.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	creia, creias, creia, creiamos, creiaes, creiem.
<i>Imperative.</i>	crê, crede.

Dizer, to say.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	digo, dizes, diz, dizemos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	disse, disseste, dissemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	direi, diras, dirá, etc.
<i>Condit.</i>	diria, dirias, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	dissera, disseras, disseramos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	diga, digas, digâmos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	dissesse, dissesses, dissêssemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	dissér, disséres, etc.
<i>Pres. Part.</i>	dito.

NOTE. — The following compounds of *dizer* are conjugated in the same way: *bemdizer*, *condizer*, *contradizer*, *maldizer* and *predizer*.

Estar, to be, see page 79.

Fazer, to do, to make (Lat. *facere*).

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	faço, fazes, faz, fazemos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	fiz, fizeste, fez, fizemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	farei, farás, fará, etc.
<i>Condit.</i>	faria, farias, faria, fariamos, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	fizera, fizeras, fizéramos, etc.

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	faça, faças, faça, façâmos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	fizesse, fizesse, fizesse, fizessemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	fizer, fizeres, etc.
<i>Past Part.</i>	feito.

NOTE. — The following compounds of *fazer* are similarly conjugated: *afazer*, *contrafazer*, *desfazer*, *perfazer*, *refazer*, and *satisfazer*.

Haver, see page 79.

Jazer, to lie, to repose.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	jazo, jazes, jaz, jazemos, jazeis, jazem.
<i>Pret.</i>	jouve (<i>antiquated</i>).

Ler, to read.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	leio, lê, lê, lemos, ledes, leem.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	leia, leias, leia, leiamos, leiais, leiam.

Perder, to lose.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	perco, perdes, perde, perdemos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	perca, percas, perca, percamos, etc.

Poder, to be able.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	posso, podes, pôde, podêmos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	pude, podeste, pôde or poudes, podêmos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	possa, possas, possa, possâmos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	podesse, podesse, podesse, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	poder, poderes, etc.

The Imperative of this verb is wanting.

Por, to put, to place.

This word and its compounds have the peculiar infinitive ending *or*;¹ it is, however, only a modification of its ancient form *poer*.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	ponho, pões, põe, pômos, ponde, põem.
<i>Pret.</i>	pus, poseste, pôs, posêmos, posesetes, poseram. ²
<i>Fut.</i>	porer, porás, porá, poreremos, poreris, porão.

¹ Some grammarians regard *por* and its compounds as a fourth conjugation.

² In these forms Bento José de Oliveira in his *Nova Gramatica Portuguesa*, ed. of 1904, uses *u* instead of *o*, *os*: — *puseste*, *pusera*, *pusesse*.

<i>Imper.</i>	punha, punhas, punha, punhamas, punheis, punham.
<i>Condit.</i>	poria, porias, poria, poriamos, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	posera, poseras, etc.¹
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	ponha, ponhas, ponhamos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	possese, poseses, posessemos, etc.¹
<i>Fut.</i>	poser, poseres, posermos, etc.
<i>Pres. Part.</i>	pondo.
<i>Past Part.</i>	pôsto.

Similarly are conjugated the compounds **antepôr, oppôr, compôr, contrapôr, dispôr, impôr, etc.**

Prazer, to please (Impersonal).

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	praz.
<i>Pret.</i>	prouve.
<i>Plup.</i>	prouvera.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	prouvesse.
<i>Fut.</i>	prouvera.

Querer, to wish.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	quero, queres, quer, queremos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	quis, quiseste, quis, quisemos, etc., or quiz, quizeste, quiz, quizemos, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	quisera, quiseras, quiséramos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	queira, queiras, queirâmos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	quisesse, quisesses, quiséssemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	quiser, quiseres, quisermos, etc.

This verb has no Imperative form and the Subjunctive is used in its stead.

Requerer, to request.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	requero, requeres, requer, requeremos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	requeira, etc.
<i>Imperative.</i>	requere, requerei.

Saber, to know.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	sei, sabes, sabe, sabemos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	soube, soubeste, soube, soubémos, etc.

¹ In these forms Bento José de Oliveira in his *Nova Gramatica Portuguesa*, ed. of 1904, uses u instead of o, os: — **puseste, pusera, pusesse.**

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	saiba, saibas, saibâmos, saibaes, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	soubesse, soubesses, soubessemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	souber, souberes, etc.

Ser, to be. See page 79.

Ter, to have. See page 79.

The following compounds of **ter** are similarly conjugated: **abster, ater, conter, deter, entreter, manter, obster, reter, and suster.**

Trazer, to bring.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	trago, trazes, traz, trazemos, etc.
<i>Pret.</i>	trouxe, trouxeste, trouxemos, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	trouxera, trouxeras, trouxéramos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	trarei, trará, trará, etc.
<i>Condit.</i>	traria, trarias, trariamos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	traga, tragas, tragamos, tragaes, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	trouzesse, trouzeses, trouzessemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	trouzer, trouzeres, etc.

Valer, to be worth.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	valho, vales, vale, valem, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	valha, valhas, valhâmos, valhaes, etc.

Ver, to see (Lat. *videre*).

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	veja, vês, vê, vêmos, vêdes, vêem.
<i>Pret.</i>	vi, viste, viu, vimos, vistes, viram.
<i>Plup.</i>	vira, viras, viramos, vireis, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	veja, veja, vejâmos, vejaes, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	visse, visses, vissemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	vir, vires, virmos, etc.
<i>Past Part.</i>	visto.

Similarly conjugated are the compounds **antever, entrever, prever and rever.**

113.

THIRD CONJUGATION

Despedir, Expedir. See **Pedir** below.

Frigir, to fry.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	frijo, frigés, frege, frigimos, frigis, fregem.
<i>Past Part.</i>	frigido and frito.

Ir,¹ to go.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	vou, vaes, vae, vamos, or imos, ides, vão.
<i>Pret.</i>	fui, foste, foi, fômos, fostes, fôram.
<i>Fut.</i>	irei, iras, irá, iremos, ireis,irão.
<i>Imp.</i>	ia, ias, ia, iamos, ieis, iam.
<i>Condit.</i>	iria, irias, iria, iríamos, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	fôra, fôras, fôra, fôramos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	vá, vás, vá, vamos, vades, vão.
<i>Imp.</i>	fôsse, fôsses, fôsse, fôssemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	fôr, fôres, fôr, etc.
<i>Imper. Pres.</i>	vae, ide.
<i>Pres. Part.</i>	indo.
<i>Past Part.</i>	ido.

Medir, to measure.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	meço, medes, mede, medemos, medem.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	meça, meças, meça, meçamos, etc.

Ouvir, to hear.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	ouço, ouves, ouve, ouvimos, ouvis, ouvem.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	ouça, ouças, ouça, ouçamos, ouçaes, ouçam.

Pedir, to ask.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	peço, pedes, pede, pedimos, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	peça, peças, peça, peçamos, peçaes, peçam.

The compounds **despedir** and **impedir** are conjugated in the same way.

Remir,² to redeem.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	redimo, redimes, redime, remimos, remis, redimem.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	redima, redimas, redima, redimâmos, etc.

Rir, to laugh.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	rio, ris, ri, rimos, rides, riem.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	ria, rias, ria, riâmos, riaes, riam.

¹ This is really a defective verb made up of parts of three different verbs: **ir**, **irmos**, **irdes**, etc., from the Latin *ire*; **vou**, **vaes**, **vão**, etc. from the Latin *vadere*; **fui**, **fosse**, **fôr**, etc., from **fui** of the verb **ser**.

² **Remir** and **redimir** are forms of the same verb.

Vir, to come.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	venho, vens, vem, vimos, vindes, vêm.
<i>Pret.</i>	vim, vieste, veio, viemos, viestes, vieram.
<i>Imp.</i>	vinha, vinhas, vinha, vinhamos, vinheis, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	viera, vieras, vieramos, viereis, etc.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	venha, venhas, venhâmos, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	viesse, viesse, viessemos, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	vier, vieras, viermos, etc.
<i>Past Part.</i>	vindo.

In the same way are conjugated the compounds: **advir, avir-se, contravir, convir, desavir, intervir, sobrevir.**

VARIABLE PARTICIPLES OF REGULAR VERBS

(See Exercise XXV, page 145)

114. Many verbs that are otherwise regular have two forms of the past participle. These participles are not always interchangeable, however, as will be seen from the following examples:

Naquelle tempo já meu irmão era morto, at that time my brother was already dead.

Naquelle tempo já meu irmão tinha morrido, at that time my brother had already died.

Muitos povos eram sujeitos a Roma, many people were subject to Rome.

Roma tinha sujeitado muitos povos, Rome had subjected many people.

In general when a verb has two forms of the past participle one of them is commonly used in the active voice and the other in the passive voice as in the examples above; some of them, however, are used in either voice, though preference is generally given

to the short forms: *elle tem gasto, pago, ganho*. It should be observed that one form is regular and the other irregular or rather contracted.

115. List of Verbs having Two Forms of the Past Participle. — [In this list (*a.*) indicates that the preceding form is used in the active voice, (*p.*) that it is used in the passive, (*a.* and *p.*) that it is used in both voices.]

FIRST CONJUGATION

aceitar , to accept	acceitado (<i>a. p.</i>)	acceito (<i>p.</i>)
assentar , to sit	assentado (<i>a. p.</i>)	assento (<i>p.</i>)
dispersar , to disperse	dispersado (<i>a. p.</i>)	disperso (<i>p.</i>)
entregar , to deliver	entregado (<i>a. p.</i>)	entregue (<i>p.</i>)
enxugar , to dry	enxugado (<i>a. p.</i>)	enxuto (<i>p.</i>)
expressar , to express	expressado (<i>a. p.</i>)	expresso (<i>p.</i>)
expulsar , to expel	expulsado (<i>a.</i>)	expulso (<i>p.</i>)
fartar , to satiate	fartado (<i>a.</i>)	farto (<i>p.</i>)
findar , to finish	findado (<i>a. p.</i>)	findo (<i>p.</i>)
ganhar , to gain	ganhado (<i>a. p.</i>)	ganho (<i>a. p.</i>)
gastar , to spend	gastado (<i>a.</i>)	gasto (<i>a. p.</i>)
isentar , to exempt	isentado (<i>a.</i>)	isento (<i>p.</i>)
juntar , to collect	juntado (<i>a. p.</i>)	junto (<i>a. p.</i>)
limpar , to clean	limpado (<i>a.</i>)	limpo (<i>a. p.</i>)
matar , to kill	matado (<i>a.</i>)	morto (<i>a. p.</i>) ¹
ocultar , to hide	occultado (<i>a. p.</i>)	occulto (<i>p.</i>)
pagar , to pay	pagado ² (<i>a.</i>)	pago (<i>a. p.</i>)
salvar , to save	salvado (<i>a. p.</i>)	salvo (<i>a. p.</i>)
soltar , to loose	soltado (<i>a.</i>)	solto (<i>p.</i>)
sujeitar , to subject	sujeitado (<i>a. p.</i>)	sujeito (<i>p.</i>)

¹ The form **morto** is usurped from the verb **morrer**, to die.

² **Pagado** is now quite antiquated.

116. SECOND CONJUGATION ¹

accender , to set fire	accendido (<i>a. p.</i>)	acceso (<i>p.</i>)
eleger , to elect	elegido (<i>a.</i>)	eleito (<i>a. p.</i>)
envolver , to involve	envolvido (<i>a. p.</i>)	envolto (<i>a. p.</i>)
prender , to take	prendido (<i>a.</i>)	preso (<i>p.</i>)
suspender , to suspend	suspendido (<i>a. p.</i>)	suspenso (<i>p.</i>)

117. THIRD CONJUGATION

abrir , to open	abrido ² (<i>a.</i>)	aberto (<i>a. p.</i>)
erigir , to erect	erigido (<i>a. p.</i>)	erecto (<i>p.</i>)
extinguir , to extinguish	extinguido (<i>a. p.</i>)	extincto (<i>p.</i>)
frigir , to fry	frigido (<i>a.</i>)	frito (<i>a. p.</i>)
imprimir , to print	imprimido (<i>a. p.</i>)	impresso (<i>a. p.</i>)
tingir , to dye	tingido (<i>a.</i>)	tinto (<i>p.</i>)

118. There are still other verbs having two forms of the past participle:

afeiçoar , to fashion	afeiçoado	afecto
anexar , to annex	anexado	annexo
ignorar , to ignore	ignorado	ignoto
manifestar , to manifest	manifestado	manifesto
sepultar , to bury	sepultado	sepulto ³
suspeitar , to suspect	suspeitado	suspeito
absolver , to absolve	absolvido	absolto
absorver , to absorb	absorbido	absorto
extender , to extend	extendido	extenso
torcer , to twist	torcido	torto
contrahir , to contract	contrahido	contracto
extrahir , to extract	extrahido	extracto
opprimir , to oppress	opprimido	oppresso
reprimir , to repress	reprimido	represso
submergir , to submerge	submergido	submerso

¹ Grammarians often give *escrevido* here as a regular participle from *escrever*, but as a matter of fact the word is not used.

² Used only in the compound form *desabrido*.

³ *Sepulto* used only in compound form *insepulto*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS

(See Exercise XXVI, p. 146)

119. In addition to those already mentioned in the list of irregular verbs, the following verbs are defective:

I.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> { advir colorir descommedir-se emollir empedernir extorquir fallir florir renhir retorquir </div>	These verbs are used only in the forms in which the <i>i</i> of the infinitive occurs.
----	--	--

II. Precaver, *to prevent*, **fremir**, *to roar*, and **soer**, *to be accustomed*, are only used in the forms in which the roots **precav**, **frem**, and **so** are followed by **e** or **i**: **precaves**, **precavia**.

THE SUBJECTS OF VERBS

(See Exercise XXVI, page 146)

120. In the main verbs agree with their subjects in number and person as they do in English, but such a general rule is not always applicable in Portuguese. The following rules cover the most important cases in which there is a departure from English usage.

a. In case of compound subjects the verb may be plural as in English, as **o sol e a lua são brilhantes**; but in certain cases it is singular, as follows:

b. It is singular when a gradation is emphasized: **uma palavra, um gesto, um olhar bastava**.

c. It is singular when an enumeration ends with **tudo, nada, nenhum, ninguém** or **cada um**. **O ouro, os diamantes, e as perolas tudo é terra e da terra**.

d. It is singular when the compound subject follows the verb: **passará o céu e a terra**. In case of proper names it is considered better for the verb to be plural: **do mesmo pai nasceram Esau e Jacob**.

e. Infinitives and phrases take the verb in the singular: **perdoar erros e engrandecer bons intentos é de espírito generoso**.

f. In case of contrasts the verb is plural: **amar, agravar, e empecer não se compadecem**.

g. The following have the verb either singular or plural indifferently: **um e outro, nem um nem outro, mais de um**. **Um e outro quer morrer. Um e outro fugiram**.

h. In certain idiomatic expressions singular subjects appear to have plural verbs. (1) **Nos é que somos patriotas**. In this sentence **nos é que** may, however, be regarded as an adverbial expression. Some grammarians regard it as analytically equivalent to **que nós somos patriotas é (facto)**. (2) **Tudo são trevas; o mundo são homens**.

i. Similarly a first person may be used with a verb of the third person: **eu é que digo adeus**, *it is I who say good-by*.

j. When one subject is in the first person and another

is of the second or third, the verb is first person plural. **Eu e tu temos**, the *eu* and *tu* being equivalent to *nós*. **Nem eu nem vós sabemos como nasce amor**, literally, *neither I nor you, (that is, we) do not know how love begins*.

k. When one subject is in the second person and another is in the third, the verb is second person plural. **Tu e Carlos estaes bons**, *you and Carlos are good*.

121. Impersonal Verbs.¹ — (See Exercise XXVII, page 147.) Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person. The English impersonal *it* is not separately expressed in this impersonal use.

Examples: **ha homens sabios**, *there are wise men*; **houve festas**, *there were feasts* (festivities); **faz calor**, *it is warm*; **faz uma semana hoje**, *it is a week to-day*. **é facil**, *it is easy*; **é justo**, *it is just*; **é bem que**, *it is well that*; **é preciso**, *it is necessary*; **são duas horas**, *it is two o'clock*; **dizem**, *they say*. Other forms especially characteristic of the Portuguese, but used in various tenses, are:

acontece, it happens

apraz-me, it pleases me

basta, it is enough

carece, it is necessary, there is need that

chega, that will do

convem, it is well, it suits

cumpre, it is necessary: **cumpre dizel-o**, it must be said

custa, it costs: **custa dormir**, it is hard to sleep

¹ These verbs are sometimes called "unipersonal" in Portuguese, for their forms are not always confined to the third person. For example, *haver*, *ser*, and *fazer* and others have all the persons.

dar-se, to happen: **deu-se esse facto**, this is what happened

é, era, foi, etc., from **ser** (§ 109), it is, was, etc.

faz, fazia, fez, from **fazer** (§ 112), it is, was, etc.

fica, it remains, rests, is, etc., as **fica combinado**, it is agreed

ha, havia, houve, from **haver** (§ 109), there is, there are, there was, there has been

importa, it matters

parece, it seems

praz-me, it pleases me, I am pleased

urge, it is urgent

resta, it remains

a. There are also the usual forms expressing operations of nature, such as **chove**, *it rains*.

b. The impersonal verbs are often used in the passive voice, as **alli se vive sem desejo**, *there one lives without desire*; **diz-se que**, *it is said that*; **precisa-se de um criado**, *a servant is wanted*.

122. Prepositions Required by Verbs. — Some verbs are followed by certain prepositions, such as **a, até, com, de, em, para, por, sobre**, in their various forms. Some of these usages correspond to the English, but most of them do not. Only a few of the cases where the usage differs from English are given here.

a. **A, to, of**, is used after **perguntar, proibir, and perdoar**: **perguntou ao medico**, *he asked the physician*; **proibiu ao moço**, *he forbade the youth*. **Eu perdôo a quantos me fizeram mal**, *I forgive all those who have ill*

used *me*. **A** is used with the infinitive when it is the object of a verb, as explained at § 123*d*.

b. The use of **a** after **querer** determines the meaning of the verb: **querer a alguma pessoa** is *to esteem or love some one*, while **querer alguma coisa** is *to desire something*.

c. **Até**, *to, at*, is used after **chegar** and **ir**: **fui até a cidade**, *I went as far as the city*.

d. **Com**, *with*, is used after **estar**, *to be*, **ter**, *to have*, and **casar**, *to marry*; **estou com fome**, *I am hungry*; **estou com frio**, *I am cold*; **fui ter com elle**, *I went to have an interview with him*; **casou com a filha de T**, *he married the daughter of T*.

e. **De**, *of*, is used after:

aproveitar-se, *to improve the opportunity*

cessar, *to cease*

gostar, *to like*

depender, *to depend*

morrer, *to die*

deixar, *to leave*

precizar, *to need*

and after certain reflexive forms, such as,

lembrar-se, *to remember* **esquecer-se**, *to forget*

and verbs implying *motion from*. Examples:

Gosto de café, *I like coffee*

Morre de fome e de frio, *he is dying of hunger and cold*

Deixa de asneiras, *stop your folly*

Lembrou-se da ocasião, *he remembered the occasion*

For **de** before an infinitive objective, see § 123*f*.

f. Classic writers use **de** with several other verbs, such as,

d'esta agua não beberei, *I shall not drink of this water*;

d'este pão não comerei, *I shall not eat of this bread*.

g. **Em**, *in*, is used after **estar**: **o dono está em casa?**
is the proprietor at home?

h. **Para**, *for*, *to*, is used after certain verbs implying motion towards: **ir**, **partir**, **vir**, **buscar**, **olhar**, and **deitar**:

Vou para casa, I am going home

Partiu para Lisboa, he has gone to Lisbon

Olhe para cá, look this way

A janella deita para o rio, the window opens toward the river

i. **NOTE.** — On the other hand several verbs which in English are followed by prepositions do not require prepositions in Portuguese. Such are:

Agradecer, to thank for: **agradeço-lhe o presente**, I thank you for the present.

Almoçar, to breakfast on: **almoçou peixe**, he breakfasted on fish.

Calçar, to put on (the feet): **calcei chinellas**, I put on slippers.

Cear, to sup on: **ceou cha**, he supped on tea.

Falar, to speak of: **falou politica**, he talked about politics.

Subir, to climb up: **subiu a serra**, he climbed up the mountain.

Vestir, to put on: **vesti o paletó**, I put on the coat.

OBJECTS OF VERBS

(See Exercise XXVIII, page 148)

123. The objects of verbs differ in the following respects from usages in English:

a. When the direct object of a verb is a person or living being, that name is preceded by the preposition **a**,

to, especially when it is necessary to distinguish the object from the subject. **Ama a Deus**, *love God*; **a Pompeu venceu Cesar**, *Cæsar overcame Pompey*; **elle subjugou ao tigre**, *he overcame the tiger*. But when the object is an animal other than man the **a**, *to*, may be omitted as **subjugou o tigre**.

b. When the direct object precedes the verb or when ambiguity is possible, the preposition **a**, *to*, precedes the object: **vence o dia á noite** or **á noite vence o dia**, *day overcomes night*.

c. When the direct object is one of the pronouns **mim**, **ti**, **si**, **elle**, **a**, **nos**, **vos**, **elles**, and **os** they are preceded by the preposition **a**: **elle os colheu a mim e não a ti**.

d. When the direct object is an infinitive the following verbs take the preposition **a**: **aprender**, **começar**, **ensinar**, **principiar**. Example: **ensinou a falar**.

e. These verbs, when followed by the infinitive denoting the beginning of action, require **a**: **começar**, **deitar**, **entrar**, **meter**, **desatar**, **botar**. **Começou a escrever**, *he began to write*; **deitaram a fugir**, *they began to flee*.

f. When the direct object of a verb is an infinitive, certain of these verbs when signifying the beginning, continuation or cessation of action, take **de** before that infinitive. These verbs are: **acabar**, **arrancar**, **cessar**, **começar**, **continuar**, **deixar**, **tomar**, **travar**. Example: **acabou de escrever**, *he has done writing*; **comecei de (or a) almoçar**, *I began to breakfast*.

SPECIAL USES OF VERBS

(See Exercise XXVIII, page 148)

124. a. To express existence in its various phases, besides **estar** and **ser**, many verbs are used. Some of

these are here illustrated: **acho-me doente**, literally, *I find myself ill*; **sinto-me envelhecido**, literally, *I feel myself grown old*; **viu-se empobrecido**, literally, *he saw himself impoverished*; **anda alegre**, literally, *he goes joyous*, that is, *he is happy*.

b. Certain verbs are combined to express movement and perception: **ouvi cantar**, *I heard (him) sing*; **vi sahir**, *I saw (him) go out*; **mandei fazer**, *I ordered made*; **fiz concertar**, *I had (it) mended*.

c. When a participle is used as an adjective it is often followed by **de**: **cercada e ornada de flores**, *surrounded and decorated with flowers*. This is especially true of the verbs **acompanhar**, **seguir**, **preceder**, **cercar**, **forrar**, **cobrir**, **pintar**, **fazer**, **vestir**.

Some grammarians explain the use of **de** in these instances as part of elliptical phrases.

PERIPHRASTIC VERB PHRASES

(See Exercise XXIX, page 149)

125. The Portuguese has periphrastic active, and passive verb phrases formed by the aid of auxiliaries. (See auxiliaries § 109).

a. *Periphrastic active phrases* are made by placing the required forms of **ter**, *to have* (see page 79), before the perfect participle masculine singular of the main verb: **tenho escrito a carta**, *I have written the letter*.

tenho escrito, I have written
tens escrito, thou hast written
tem escrito, he (she) has written
temos escrito, we have written

b. *Periphrastic passive phrases* are formed by the use of **ser** or **estar**, *to be*, and the participle of the main verb which must agree with the subject. (See notes on **ser** and **estar** on page 78.)

Tenho sido transportado, I have been carried

José foi morto, José was killed

Maria estava molhada pela chuva, Maria was wet by the rain

c. The active voice is often used where the passive would be used in English. **Mandou preparar o jantar**, *he ordered dinner to be prepared*. **Mandei trazer um livro**, *I ordered a book to be brought*. **É de suppor, é de ver, é de crer** are all translatable only in passive forms.

d. Progressive phrases are formed by the use of **estar**, *to be*, **ficar**, *to remain*, **ir**, *to go*, and some others with the present participle of the main verb. **Estou fallando**, *I am speaking*; **fica sabendo que —**, *know that —*.

REFLEXIVE VERBS)

(See Exercise XXX, page 150)

126. The reflexive verbs are conjugated by connecting the reflexive pronouns **me**, **te**, **se**, **nos**, and **vos** with the verb: **não me metto nisto**, *I do not meddle in this affair*; **vá se deitar**, *go lie down*; **vá se embora**, *go away*:

a. A certain force and grace are sometimes imparted by the use of reflexive forms even when the verb is intransitive. **Ella morre de tristeza**, *she is dying of grief*, is grammatically correct, but **ella se morre de tristeza** is a more expressive way to say the same thing owing to the attention called to the subject by the use of **se**.

b. Certain verbs are much used in the reflexive sense: **queixar-se**, *to complain*, and **arrepender-se**, *to repent*, are used only in the reflexive forms; **despedir-se**, *to take leave*, and **calar-se**, *to hush*, are used in both the active and reflexive forms, but the active forms have different meanings.

c. Neuter or impersonal reflexives with **me**, **se**, etc., are much used: **me dizem** or **dizem-me**, *they tell me*; **me parece** or **parece-me**, *it seems to me*.

d. The reflexive verbs do not take as objects the pronouns **o**, **a**, **os**, **as**.

IMPERATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

(See Exercise XXXI, page 151)

127. Colloquially the imperative is not so much used as the subjunctive which is used in its place. Thus **fale** (subj. pres.) **com ella** would be used in place of **fala** (imper.) **com ella**, *speak to her*; the latter is regarded as less polite, possibly because **fala** has **tu** (understood) as its subject, while **fale** has for its subject **o Senhor**, **você**, etc. For the same reason **tenha paciência** (subj.), *have patience*, is used in place of **tem paciência** (imper.).¹ **Preste** (not **presta**) **atenção**, *pay attention*.

a. It is especially to be noted that when there is a negative the subjunctive should be used instead of the imperative: **não deva**, *you ought not* (not **não deve**); **não me fale** (subj.), *don't talk to me* (not **não me fala**, imperative).

¹ One often hears **tenha a paciência**, which is correct when the sentence has a complement, as **tenha a paciência de ler esta carta**.

b. One of the most common errors in Portuguese is the use of the present indicative in place of the imperative (or subjunctive). The following are examples: **Traz-me um copo d'agua**, should be **traze-me** (or **traga-me**) **um copo d'agua**, *fetch me a glass of water*; **diz a seu pai que**, should be **dize a teu pai** (or **diga a seu pai**) **que**, *tell your father that*; **traduz este carta**, should be **traduza esta carta**, *translate this letter*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THE INDICATIVE

128. In certain dependent sentences the subjunctive or the indicative is used according to circumstances. When the fact is doubtful the subjunctive is used, otherwise the indicative:

É incerto que venha, it is uncertain about his coming.

É certo que vem, it is certain that he is coming.

Não conheço pintor que faça este quadro, I know no painter who could make this picture.

Não conheço o pintor que fez este quadro means: I do not know the painter who made this picture.

129. When the adverb **talvez**, *perhaps*, precedes a verb it should be subjunctive; when it follows the verb, it should be indicative: **talvez seja isso exacto**, or **isso é talvez exacto**, *perhaps this (or it) is so*.

130. Certain idiomatic expressions use the subjunctive with the indefinite and relative pronouns as explained at § 102.

131. Similarly the subjunctive is used with **como**: **seja como for**, *be that as it may*.

132. The subjunctive is sometimes used in the sense of a conjunction: **estão ao alcance de todos os que as buscam, seja como estudo, seja como curiosidade** (HERCULANO). *They are within the reach of all who seek them whether for study or (as a mere matter of) curiosity.*

PERSONAL INFINITIVE

(See Exercise XXXI, page 151)

133. The personal infinitive is an inflected form of the infinitive. It is found in the oldest Portuguese writings, and it is likewise different in use from anything in any other language.¹ Its use is best explained by examples:

Impersonal: **comprei este livro para estudar**, *I bought this book (for me) to study.*

Personal: **comprei este livro para estudardes**, *I bought this book for you to study.* **O nosso mestre está contente por sabermos a lição**, *our teacher is pleased because we know the lesson.* **Ficou surprehendido de não estarem os soldados devidamente em ordem**, *he was surprised that the soldiers were not duly in order.* **É preciso comprarmos**, *it is necessary to buy (that we buy).*

¹ Bento José de Oliveira, in his *Nova Gramática Portuguesa*, 26a ed. p. 46, says that the personal infinitive should be regarded as an aorist form of the subjunctive.

VIII. THE INDECLINABLES

ADVERBS

(See Exercise XXXII, page 152)

134. Adverbs may be single words as **bem**, *well*, **logo**,¹ *presently*, **cedo**, *early*.

a. Or they may be adverbial phrases such as the following:

a miudo, repeatedly
ante-hontem, day before yesterday
as cegas, blindly
as escuras, darkly
até aqui, thus far
a toda hora, hourly
a torto e direito, right and left
a vista, at sight
com effeito, indeed
d'aqui a pouco, shortly
d'aqui em diante, henceforth
de dia, by day
de longe, afar
de noite, by night
de nenhuma sorte, by no means
de perto, near by
de repente, suddenly
de chofre, suddenly, unexpectedly
de tarde, in the afternoon
de vez em quando, from time to time
em fim, finally

¹ **Logo** is an unusually elastic adverb meaning all the way from *right now* to *never*.

em seguida, one after another
em vão, in vain
hoje em dia, nowadays (*popular*)
para sempre, forever
pelo menos, at least
por baixo, below
por cima, aboye
por em quanto, meantime
pouco mais ou menos, a little more or less
quando muito, at most

b. The following are composite forms: **depois** (**de** and **pois**), *afterwards*; **quiça**, *perhaps*, (abbreviation of **quem sabe**, *who knows*); **tambem** (**tão** and **bem**), *also*; **tampouco** or **tão pouco**. Example: **elle não quiz e eu tão pouco**, *he didn't want it, and neither did I*.

c. Many adverbs are formed by adding **mente** to a feminine adjective. The **mente** is usually to be translated by the English ending *ly*; **escuramente**, *darkly*; **propriamente**, *properly*.

d. When two or more adjectives ending in **mente** follow each other this termination is used with the last and is understood for the others: **justa e propriamente**, *justly and properly*.

e. Some adverbs have the same forms as the masculine adjectives: such are **alto**, **baixo**, **barato**, **certo**, **claro**, **conforme**, and **muito**: **falar baixo**, *to speak low*; **comprou barato**, *he bought cheaply*.

f. **Que** is an adverb when used to modify an adjective, and can be substituted by **como**, **quão** or **quanto**: **que bella é a noite**, *how fine the night is*.

g. **Eis**, best translated *behold*, is a demonstrative adverb: **eis Lisboa!** *behold Lisbon!* **Eis o homem!** *behold the*

man! **Eis** *que*, **eis-aqui**, **eis-ahi**, and **eis-alli** are all used in directing attention. With the objective of the personal pronouns it forms enclitics: **eil-o**, **eil-os**, *see him*, *see them*.

h. Adverbs are sometimes used after certain verbs where English requires adjectives. These verbs are: **estar**, **ficar**, **permanecer**, **sair**, **continuar**. The following expressions are good Portuguese: **Este negocio parece-me bom** or **parece-me bem**, *this business seems to me to be good*. **Estou bem** or **estou bom** (or *boa*), *I am well*. **Está bem**, *he is well off* (financially).

135. a. *Special cases.* — **Aqui**, *here*, *in this place*, is associated with the first person. **Por aqui**, *this way*; **d'aqui**, *hence*, **d'aqui a tres dias**, *three days hence*; **d'aqui em diante**, *henceforth*, *from now on*.

b. **Cá**, *here*, is also associated with the first person: **vem cá**, *come here*. It is also used with the first person for emphasis: **eu cá me entendo**, *I (here) know what I am about*.

c. **Ahi** is associated with the second person and refers to a fixed place near the speaker: **bote ahi**, *put it just there*.

d. **Ali** is associated with the third person and refers to a more distant and fixed place.

e. **Muito** when used in comparisons may mean either *very* or *too*; **muito longe** may be either *very far* or *too far*, according to the context.

f. **Sim**, *yes*, is used after **que** in indirect discourse to mean *so* or *just so*; **creio que sim**, *I believe so*; **acho que sim**, *I find it so*, or *I think so*.

g. **Sim** and **não** as replies are rarely used *alope*, but in polite conversation are accompanied by **Senhor** or **Senhora**.

h. Where *yes* would be used in English, in Portuguese the verb used is ordinarily repeated or *é* is used. **Está prompto?** *Are you ready?* **Estou, I am.** **Viu o vapor?** *Did you see the steamer?* **Vi, or vi-o, I saw it.**

i. **Nada** is sometimes used as an emphatic *no*, as explained in § 136.

j. **Mesmo** is used for emphasis in connection with the adverbs **ahi**, **aqui**, etc.: **ahi mesmo**, *in that very spot.*

k. **D'ahi por diante** or **d'ahi em diante**, *from that time on.*

l. **Lá em cima**, *up there*; **lá em baixo**, *down there.*

m. **Aonde**, *where, whither*, indicates motion toward, and **donde**, *whence*, motion from a place; **onde estou**, **donde venho**, **e aonde vou**, *where I am, whence I come, and whither I go.*

n. **Para onde**, *whither*; **para baixo**, *downward*; **para traz**, *backward.*

o. **Por onde**, *which way*; **por baixo**, *beneath*; **por detraz**, *behind.*

p. The English *ago* is expressed by the use of the impersonal verb **ha**, from **haver** (§109): **ha um anno**, *a year ago.*

q. *Just*, and *just now* are expressed by the use of the verbs **acabar** and **chegar**, and by the adverbs **ainda agora**: **as acabou de jantar**, *he has just dined*; and **ainda agora jantou**, *he has just now dined.* **Agorinha** a diminutive form of **agora**, *now*, is similarly used and shortens the time past.

r. *There* is expressed by **ali** (or **alli**), **lá**, and **acolá**. **Lá** and **acolá** are associated with the third person, and refer to places distant but not precise. **Bote lá**, *put it there*, i. e., *somewhere there.* **Digo a um vae acolá**, *e elle*

vae; e a outro vem cá, e elle vem, I say to one go there and he goes, and to another come here and he comes.

s. It often happens that a single English word can be rendered in Portuguese only by an adverbial phrase; such are *somewhat* and *somewhere*. **Um tanto indisposto, somewhat ill; em alguma outra parte, somewhere else.**

Algures is sometimes, but not often, used for *somewhere*.

NEGATION

(See Exercise XXXIII, page 153)

136. The adverbs of simple negation are:

não, no, not: não estudei, I have not studied

nem, neither, nor: nem um nem outro, neither the one nor the other

nunca, never: nunca vi, I have never seen: nunca mais, never more

jamais, never: nunca jamais o saberá, you will never know it

nada, nothing. (Though commonly a noun this word is sometimes used as an adverb of emphatic negation: **vai a cidade? are you going to the city? Nada! decidedly not!)**

The expression **pois não**, literally, *why not*, is sometimes an affirmative, equivalent to *certainly*, but it is sometimes a negative. The meaning in these cases is determined by the intonation.

Pois sim is similarly an affirmation or negation according to intonation.

137. Double or Emphatic Negative. — Two negatives are used for the purpose of strengthening the negation, and are not, as in English, equivalent to

an affirmative. **Não sei nada disso**, *I know nothing about it*, is correct Portuguese; likewise are such expressions as **não sei não**; **não tenho nada**; **não ha nada**; **não conheço ninguém**; **não devemos nunca**.

INTERROGATION

(See Exercise XXXIII, page 153).

138. There is no special arrangement of words for asking a question. That a question is asked is indicated colloquially by the tone of the voice, or, when written, it is shown by the use of the interrogation mark. **Este livro é meu** may mean *is this book mine?* in which case the interrogation mark would be used, or it may mean *this book is mine*.

There are certain words, however, which in themselves sometimes, but not always, imply questions, such as **quanto** or **quanta**, *how much*; **quantos** or **quantas**, *how many*; **porque**, *why* or *because*; **como**, *how* or *as*, and **qual**, *which*. The expression **não é assim?** *is it not so?* and **não acha?** *don't you find it so?* refer to a preceding sentence or idea and are equivalent to the French *n'est-ce pas?* or the German *nicht wahr?*

PREPOSITIONS

(See Exercise XXXIV, page 154)

139. Prepositions are either single, as **a**, *to*, **até** *until*; or they are prepositional phrases: **cerca de**, *about*, **antes de**, *before* (in time).

The prepositions **de** and **a** are used in connection with direct objects as explained § 122, 123.

a. **De** follows certain adjectives:

capaz de, capable of: **elle é capaz de chegar a qualquer**

hora, he is liable to arrive at any time

cego de, blind: **cego de um olho**, blind in one eye

cego de raiva, blind with rage

dependente de, dependent upon

digno de, worthy of

doente de, ill with *or* of

distante de, distant from

facil de, easy to

proprio de, }
proprio para, } proper to, *or* for

b. Similarly **de** follows certain participles used as adjectives (see § 124c), such as

pintado de verde, painted green

vestida de seda, dressed in silk

c. **De** is also used idiomatically in such expressions as **estar de pé** or **em pé**, *to stand up*; **ir de chinellas**, *to go in one's slippers*.

d. The preposition **de** is much used in certain idiomatic phrases and sentences, such as **chorar de prazer**, *to weep for joy*; **morrer de fome**, *to die of hunger*; **fazer de tolo**, *to act the fool*; **responder de não**, *to say no*; **chamar de ladrão**, *to call one a thief*.

e. The preposition **de**, *of*, often drops the **e** and takes an apostrophe when followed by a word beginning with a vowel: **d'este**, *of this*, for **de este**; **d'aquelle**, *of that*; they are also written **deste** and **daquelle**, with **elle** it forms **delle**.

f. When the preposition **de** is followed by the definite article, the two words unite and are written and pronounced **do, da, dos, das** (in place of **de o**, etc.). (See § 15b.)

140. The preposition **em, in**, is similarly combined with the definite article forming **no, na, nos, nas**, as explained at § 15c, and with **este, esse**, and **aquelle** forming **nesto, nesse**, and **naquelle**.

141. The preposition **a, to**, has so many and such varied uses that it seems best to give a list of them:¹

A, to, is used to express:

a. The place to or toward which, with the idea of returning: **ir a praça, to go to the square.**

b. The place where or near which: **estar á porta, to be at the door; situado a beira-mar, situated at the seaside.**

c. Distance, measure of place and time: **a tiro de bala, a gunshot away; a tres kilometros, three kilometers away.**

d. End or purpose: **trabalhar a bem da patria, to work for the good of the country; deu-lhe o vinho a provar, he gave him the wine to test.**

e. Material: **pintar a oleo, to paint in oil; bordar a ouro, to embroider with gold.**

f. Time in which: **partir ao meio dia, to leave at noon.**

g. Future time near at hand expressed with the infinitive: **está a chegar, he is about to arrive.**

h. Length of time: **d'aqui a dez dias, ten days hence.**

i. Manner: **obra feita a pedaços, work done by bits; a pé, afoot; a cavallo, horseback, a nado, (by means of) swimming.**

¹ *Nova Gramatica Portuguesa* de Bento José de Oliveira, 26a ed. Coimbra, 1904, p. 98.

j. Distribution and succession: **dois a dois**, *two by two*; **gota a gota**, *drop by drop*.

k. Means, instrument, cause: **matar á fome**, *to kill with hunger*; **ás punhaladas**, *with dagger thrusts*; **cantar á viola**, *to sing with a viola*; **calçar aos pés**, *to wear on the feet*. (See note § 8. 2.)

l. Measure, price, tax: **medir a metros**, *to measure in meters*; **comprar ás arrobas**, *to buy by the arroba*; **vender a peso**, *to sell by weight*; **juros a cinco por cento**, *interest at five per cent*.

m. Quantity: **aos centos**, *by the hundreds*; **chover a bom chover**, *to pour down rain*.

n. Manner of action (with infinitives): **andar a saltar**, *to go jumping*; **ouvir passaros a cantar**, *to hear the birds a-singing*.

o. Conformity: **ao parecer**, *as it seems*, **a vontade**, *as much as one likes*.

p. Object of reference: **prompto a responder**, *ready to respond*; **apertar a mão a alguém**, *to press one's hand*.

q. Hypothesis: **a ser assim**, *so to be*.

r. **A** and **para**, *to*, besides other relations, both express movement toward, but with this noteworthy difference: **a** contains the idea of returning, while **para** contains the idea of remaining. **Vou a Europa** and **vou para Europa** both mean *I am going to Europe*, and are both correct Portuguese, but the former means that I go to return, while the latter means I go to remain there.

In such expressions as **está para chegar** and **está a chegar**, *he is about to arrive*, both refer to future action, but **para** expresses a more remote and **a** a more immediate action.

142. In verse and colloquially *com*, *with*, sometimes drops the *m* when followed by the definite article: *co'os teus* or *c'os teus*, *with thy*, in place of *com os teus*.

On the preposition *per* see § 15*d*.

143. *Pelo que* is an idiomatic expression: *pelo que dizem*, *from what they say*; *pelo que me toca*, *in so far as it concerns (touches) me*.

Certain adjectives and participles used as adjectives are followed by *por*:

celebre	illustre
distinto	notavel
famoso	responsavel

Examples of participles used as adjectives and requiring *por*:

banhado	habitado¹
cercado¹	perseguido
conhecido	povoado¹
disperso	

144. The following are idiomatic prepositional expressions:

abaixo de , beneath	aquem de , this side of
acima de , on top of	a roda de , about
afim de , to the end that	cerca de , about
alem de , beyond	diante de , before
ao redor de , around	de entre , between

¹ *Cercado*, *habitado*, and *povoado* also admit of *de*, as *cercado de amigos*, *surrounded by friends*.

de frente de , in front of	de vez em quando , from
dentro de , inside of	time to time
depois de , after	junto de , near
de proposito , on purpose	longe de , far from
de sob , below	perto de , near
de sobra , superabundantly	por baixo de , below
de todo , entirely	por cima de , above
detráz de , behind	

For prepositions required by certain verbs see § 122.

CONJUNCTIONS

(See Exercise XXXIV, page 154)

145. Conjunctions are either single as *e*,¹ *and*, *porem*, *but*, *que*, *than*, or they are conjunctival phrases. Following are the more idiomatic of the *conjunctival phrases* :

afim de que, for the purpose of
ainda que, although, in spite of the fact that
a não ser que, unless
antes que, rather than, before
apesar de, in spite of
apesar de que, in spite of the fact that
comtanto que, so that, provided
de maneira que, } so that, in such a way that
de modo que, }
depois que, after that

¹ The conjunction *e*, *and*, is sounded almost as if it were *i*, and when written is distinguished from *é*, *is*, by the latter always having the acute accent.

de tal modo que, } in such fashion that
 de tal sorte que, }
 enquanto que, while, although
 entretanto que, whilst
 ao caso que, in case that
 para que, in order that
 se bem que, although
 sem que, unless
 visto que, in view of the fact that

a. *Than* is usually **que**, but it is also expressed by **de**, **de que**, **do que**, **da que**: **mais agua que café**, *more water than coffee*; **mais que vinte**, *more than twenty*; **mais do que é necessario**, *more than is necessary*; **mais de uma vez**, *more than once*.

b. *Either . . . or* are expressed by **ou . . . ou**: **ou pode ou não pode**, *either you can or you cannot*.

c. *Neither . . . nor* are expressed by **não . . . nem** or by **nem . . . nem**: **não quero, nem posso**, *I neither wish nor can I*; **não tenho nem ouro nem prata**, *I have neither gold nor silver*.

INTERJECTIONS

146. Interjections are single words as **Oh**, **oxalá**, *would to God*, or they are interjectional phrases as **valha-me Deus! ai de mim! alas me! quem me dera**, *would that; tomára que elle venha*, *I wish he would come*.

Interjectional phrases containing **de** such as **ai de mim**, **infeliz de ti**, **pobre delle**, are said to be elliptical; the complete expression would be something like: **Ai (tem compaixão) de mim! infeliz (tenho**

compaixão) de ti! pobre (tenho compaixão) delle!
 (§ 139e) coitado! coitadinha!

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN WRITING

(See Exercise XXXV, page 155)

147. There are several abbreviations of Latin origin that are the same as those in English, such as **A. D.** for *anno domini*, etc. for *et cetera*, **P. S.** for *post scriptum*, and the like. In addition there are many abbreviations for Portuguese words, the most common of which are given in the following list. These are used extensively in correspondence, and in the official documents.

Aff^o = affectuoso

Amo. or A^o = amigo

Ant^o = Antonio

Att^o = attento

B^{el} = bacharel

B^{to} = Bento

Cap^m = Capitão

C^{ia} or Comp. = companhia

Cons^o or Cons^{ro} = conselheiro

C^{ol} or Cor^{el} = Coronel

Cr^{do} = criado

D. = Dom, Dona.

D. G. = Deus guarde

D^a = dita, Dona.

D^o = dito

D. D. or Dig^{mo} = Dignissimo

Dr. = Doutor

E. F. = Estrada de ferro

Ex^{mo} = Excellentissimo

Ex^{ma} = Excellentissima

E. R. M. = espera receber
mercê

Fer^a = Ferreira

Fr. = Frei

Fran^{co} } Francisco

Gen^l = General

hum^l = humilde

Ilma. = Illustrissima

Imp. = Imperial

J. C. = Jesus Christo

Jan^o = Janeiro

Joaq^m } = Joaquim

J^m

J^e = José

M. D. = muito digno	S. P. = serviço publico
M¹ or Mel. = Manuel	S. S. = { Sua Senhoria
M^a = minha and Maria	{ Sua Santidade
Mto. = muito	Sr., Snr. = Senhor
N. = norte	Snra. = Senhora
N. or N^o. = numero	St^o = Santo ¹
N. S. = Nosso Senhor	St^a = Santa ¹
N^a S^a = Nossa Senhora	S. E. O. = salvo erro ou
O. = oeste	omissão
Obd^o or Obg^{do} = obrigado	V. = Você
Obd^a or Obg^{da} = obrigada	V^a = Viuva
O. D. C. = offerece, dedica	V. A. = Vossa Alteza
e consagra (used in the	V. A. R. = Vossa Alteza
dedication of books, etc.)	Real
p. p. = proxima passada	V. Ex^a = Vossa Excellencia
p^a = para	V. Mag^e = Vossa Majes-
p^o = padre	tade
Per^a = Pereira	V. M. I. = Vossa Majes-
P. E. F. = por especial favor	tade Imperial
q^{do} = quando	Ven^{dor} = Venerador
q^{to} = quanto	V. M. = Vossa Mercê
Rev^a = Reverencia, Rever-	Vm^{ce} = Vossa Mercê
endissima	V. S. or V^a S^a = Vossa
Rv^{do} = Reverendo	Senhoria
Rv^{mo} = Reverendissimo	1^o, 2^o = primeiro, segundo,
s/c = sua casa	etc.
S. = São, ¹ Silva, Sousa, sua,	7br. = Setembro
sul	8br. = Outubro
S. M. I. = Sua Majestade	9br. = Novembro
Imperial	10br. = Dezembro

¹ São, Santo and Santa, *Saint*. São is a short form of Santo, and is used before names beginning with a consonant, as São José, São

SIMILARITY OF WORDS IN THE TWO LANGUAGES

(See Exercise XXXVI, page 156)

One of the difficulties sometimes encountered by a beginner of Portuguese comes from a misleading similarity of certain words in the two languages. A few such words are here brought together to illustrate and emphasize this feature of the language, but the list is not complete.

It is noticeable that words of this kind are chiefly from the Latin, and that they have descended to the English language with one of their meanings emphasized, and to the Portuguese with another. It should be noted, however, that the meanings given are the common rather than the only ones.

**List of Portuguese Words having a Meaning Different
from Similar Words in English**

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
acção	share (<i>in company</i>)	assistir	to be present
acordar	to waken	bravo	wild
actual	present (<i>time</i>)	bruto	rough
admirar-se	to be surprised	campo	open field
alumno	student	collegio	school (<i>preparatory</i>)
apreciar	enjoy	combinar	agree
armar (rede)	tie up	commum	ordinary
artista	artisan	competencia	jurisdiction
ascender	to light (<i>fire</i>)	concertar	to mend
assentar	to sit	constipação	cold (<i>in the head</i>)

Tomaz. **Santo** is used before words beginning with a vowel, as **Santo Antonio**, **Santo Ignacio**. **Santa** is the feminine form and is used before feminine nouns; the final **a** is dropped when the name begins with a vowel, as **Sant' Anna**.

PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH	PORTUGUESE	ENGLISH
damno	injury	nomear	appoint
demandar		offendido	hurt
(porto)	to head for	oficio	trade
denunciar	to announce (<i>and</i> denounce)	ordinario	commonplace, worthless
desapontar	to put out	parente	kinsman
desgraça	misfortune	particular	private
direito	right, straight	partir	to start
durar	to last	prejuizo	injury
espaço	period	querer	wish
espectaculo	performance	real	royal
estreito	narrow	regimento	rule
esquesito	queer	ruim	bad
face	cheek	segundo	according to
faltar	to be lacking	sereno	dew
fama	rumor	singular	peculiar
impertinente	exacting	sorte	prize
importar	to amount to	sucesso	accident
idioma	language	vapor	steam, steamer
idiotismo	idiom	vicio	habit
miseravel	wretched	vulgarizar	to popularize
miseria	want	vulgarmente	commonly

EXERCISES

I

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS

(See § 2, page 5)

- a:** ha, sal, para, gato, mata, ama, aza.
e: pé, fé, sé; sello, mesmo; desde, elle, vale, grande.
i: li, vi, ri, dormi, kilo; animal, limitado, dividir.
o: { so, forte, voz, embora.
 avô, vogal, por.
 vento, bello, curto, tudo, isto.
u: tu, lugar, cru, tribu, uma, singular, natureza.
y: syllaba, martyr, myope, mystério, lyrico.

VOWEL-COMPOUNDS: PURE DIPHTHONGS

(See § 3, page 6)

- ai:** Cairo, paiol, mais, vai, jamais, amais.
au: pau, mau.
ei: lei, anneis, achei, sapateiro, primeiro, hei, dinheiro.
eu: eu, ceu, deu, breu.
iu: viu, insistiu.
oe: heroe.
oi: boi, foi, noite, depois, coitado.
ou: ouro, couro, pouco, estou, sou, pensou.
ui: fui, cuidado.

NASAL DIPHTHONGS

(See § 3, page 7)

ã: irmã, rã, sã, maçã, lã.**æ:** mãe, cães, pães, capitães, allemães.**ão:** mão, não, irmão, João, são, atenção, nação, coração.**õe:** nações, edições, feições, corações, feijões. Camões.**ui:** muito.*Other nasal sounds:* bem, bom, fim, fins, sem, sim, som, com, bons, um, uns, homem, homenagem, vim, vins.

II

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS

(See § 5, page 7)

b: bala, bobo.**c:** cada, faca, cedo, cesta, cinco, civil, corta, culpa.**ch:** cha, chamar, chimica, epocha, cholera, chocar.**ç:** cortiça, benção, ouço.**d:** dado, desde, dia, doce, duro.**f:** fazer, ferro, fico, fogo, café, offerta.

g: { gallo, gosto, gusa.
 geral, gengebra, gymnasio.
 guia, guisa, guincho.

gn: maligno, assignar, signal, digno.**h:** ha, haver, herva, hora, hoje**j:** anjo, José, joga, jejum, já.**k:** kilo, kali.**l:** lastro, litro, leste, lontra, lustroso, elle.**lh:** carvalho, barulho, batalha, brilho, orelha, orgulho.**m:** mármore, momento; alguém, bem, hontem, pore[m].**n:** entende, neste, naquella, ninho, nove, nuvem.

nh: ganhar, gallinha, tenho, tamanho, caminho.

p: pagina, pintura, ponta, praça.

ph: philosophia, phosphoro.

pt: escripto, prompto or pronto, captivo.

q: { quadro, qualquer, quatorze.
quinze, aqui, quieto.
quente, quem, queijo.

r: { renda, rio, rosto, rustico.
burro, serra, guerra.
caro, serio, genro, melro.

s: { salsa, sino, socio.
lisa, casar, formosa, saudoso, abuso.

t: tio, tonto.

th: thesouro, mathematico.

v: vacca, velho, vela, vinho, viuvo, visivel.

x: { trouxe.
sexo, fluxo.
extenso, excepto.
exame, exemplo, exorbitante, existencia.
caixa, peixe.
xadrez, xiz, xique-xique.

z: zona, zinco, zurrar, brazas, zangado.

III

ACCENTS¹

(See § 8-9, page 13)

ão: caixão, caixões, lião,

atenção, nações, orfão.

i: aqui, Ariry, Piquiry.

l: azul, perfil, general.

r: vapor, salgar, senhor.

u: tatu, bambu, caju.

¹ The student is warned against supposing that words ending alike are always accented alike.

z: rapaz, feroz, rapidez, solidiez, alcatraz.

im: marfim, latim.

ia: theologia, mineralogia.

aça: fumaça, alfaça.

ade: liberdade, caridade.

ode: bode, bigode.

ice: tolice, indice, apendice.

ude: virtude, altitude.

ado -a: usado -a, cravado.

edo: olivedo, figueredo.

ido -a: cosido -a, resumido.

udo -a: cascudo -a.

ato: barato, celibato.

ano: bahiano, oceano.

anço -a: descânço, balanço, aliança, esperança.

anco: banco, fianco, arranco.

anto: amianto, encanto.

ico -a: rico, barrica.

iga: ortiga, espiga.

eja: cerveja, corteja, igreja.

eiro -a: sapateiro, bandeira.

ume: lume, bitume.

uto -a: permuta, luta.

ando: amando, lendo, and the present participles.

elho -a: conselho, espelho.

erna: perna, lanterna.

alho -a: cascalho, retalho.

ilho -a: filho, milho, rodilha.

olho -a: repolho, escolha.

ulho -a: gorgulho, agulha.

imba: cacimba, caximba.

ello -a: cabelo, chinella.

elo: modelo, farelo.

inho -a: ninho, passarinho.

ino: menino, ensino.

ora: lavoura, professora.

uro -a: escuro -a, rapadura.

oso -a: formoso -a, gostoso -a, venenoso -a, raposa.

oço -a: almoço, destroço.

esto -a: honesto -a.

ista: dentista, fatalista.

usto -a: justo, robusto.

ate: combate, alfaiate.

ete: paquete, bobinete.

ote: lote, filhote, capote.

eta: cometa, propheta.

ito -a: granito, cabrito.

ota: idiota, gaivota, esgota.

que: alambique, reboque.

ante: tratante, brilhante.

ente: plenamente, prudente.

ento -a: nascimento, sementimento, augmento.

ema: problema, systema.

inte: pedinte, ouvinte.

ismo -a: sophismo.

istro: ministro, sinistro.

ivo -a: captivo -a, activo, negativo, passivo.

eza: defeza, viveza.

ouro: bebedouro.

encia: independencia.

aco -a: demoniaco.	olo -a: frivolo, malevolo -a.
ico -a: logico, colerico.	ulo -a: pendulo, cumulo.
ido : calido, fervido.	imo -a: riquissimo, longuis-
ega : alfandega, pandega.	simo, emprestimo.
ago : amago, relampago.	ito -a: habito, implicito.
ego : trafego, folego, pecego.	aro -a: passaro, barbaro.
igo : prodigo, perigo.	ero -a: aspero, prolifero.
alo : escandalo, estalo, abalo.	ore : arvore, marmore.

On the penult.	{ baldio, desafio, desvario, fastio, feitio, tresvario, sadio, pousio, vadio, escorregadio, luzidio, cun- hadio, plantio, gentio, armentio.
On the antepenult.	{ armario, buzio, cambio, diario, inventario, adagio, secretario, sec- tario, tributario, adventicio, fron- tespicio, facticio, ficticio, prodigio, delirio, mortuario, escriptorio, la- boratorio, seminario, commen- tario, notorio, mortorio, agio, cirio, relogio.

IV

SYLLABICATION

(See § 11, page 19)

Separate the following words into their syllables:

amanhã	banheiro	damnado
aplicação	cançar	escripto
areia	catarrho	estampilha
assumpto	comnosco	estou
altalho	constantemente	extracto

galheiro

gallo

guerra

isthmo

lenço

linguagem

não

navalha

nenhum

peixe

philosophia

prompto

quando

quilate

sello

senhora

senhor

subdelegado

trabalhador

thesouro

tinta

uma

vinho

vulgar

V

DEFINITE ARTICLE

(See § 14, page 23)

VOCABULARY

o cavallo, the horse

o garfo, the fork

o homem, the man

o menino, the boy

o pai, the father

o passaro, the bird

o vapor, the steamer

tem, has

está, is (*temporary*)

estão, are

ainda, yet

a colher, the spoon

a faca, the knife

a mãe, the mother

a manteiga, the butter

a menina, the girl

a rosa, the rose

a senhora, the lady

aqui, here

e, and

onde, where

mas, but

1. O pai, a mãe e a menina. 2. Os homens e os cavallos. 3. Os garfos, as facas, e as colheres. 4. O passaro está aqui. 5. O homem tem o cavallo. 6. Onde está a senhora? 7. Aqui está a rosa. 8. As senhoras e as meninas estão aqui, mas os homens e os meninos ainda não estão. 9. A manteiga não é boa. 10. Pelo vapor a viagem é agradável; pela estrada de ferro é má. 11. O João está no campo com o francez. 12. Venho da cidade pelo caminho comprido. 13. Na immensidade dos mares. 14. O livro foi adoptado pelo conselho de instrucção do Ceará a 19 de Agosto do corrente anno.

1. The horse is here. 2. The knife, the fork, and the spoon. 3. The mothers and the fathers and the girls. 4. Here is the horse. 5. Where is the knife? 6. The horses and the men. 7. Here is the mother. 8. The ladies are not here. 9. Where are the men? 10. The windows of the house.

VI

INDEFINITE ARTICLE

(See § 17, page 25)

VOCABULARY¹

o amigo, friend	o livro, book
o cabelo, hair	a agua, water
o chapeo, hat	a cadeira, chair
o copo, cup, glass	a filha, daughter
o filho, son	a flor, flower
o leite, milk	a mesa, table
bonito -a, pretty	branco -a, white
é, is (<i>permanently</i>)	muito, very
em, in, on	dois (<i>m.</i>), duas (<i>f.</i>), two
no (<i>m.</i>), na (<i>f.</i>), in the	uns (<i>m.</i>), umas (<i>f.</i>), some

1. Um amigo tem um cavallo. 2. O chapeo é branco.
 3. Um chapeo está na mesa. 4. Uma filha e dois filhos.
 5. Uma cadeira muito bonita. 6. É um chapeo muito
 branco. 7. Duas filhas bonitas. 8. Um copo d'agua
 ou de leite. 9. Ja faz mais de uma semana. 10. Um
 dos filhos cahiu na agua. 11. Que bello dia; que bella
 flor. 12. Com umas cartas na mão. 13. No interior é
 mais agradável especialmente o tempo das chuvas. 14. É
 uma felicidade.

1. A pretty flower is on the table. 2. The lady has a
 white hat. 3. A friend has the horses. 4. The mother
 has a pretty daughter. 5. The son has a very pretty
 horse. 6. The man has some knives, forks, and spoons.
 7. A chair, a table, a plate, a knife, a fork, a spoon, a
 napkin, a glass of wine, a loaf of bread, a good dinner.
 8. A short letter (*cartinha*). 9. It is a question of health.

¹ In the remaining vocabularies the definite article is placed
 before the nouns to indicate the gender, but it is not repeated in
 the English translation.

VII PLURAL OF NOUNS

(See § 20, page 27)

VOCABULARY

o animal , animal	a espada , sword
o anzol , fish-hook	a irmã , sister
o irmão , brother	a lição , lesson
o jornal , newspaper	a nação , nation
o paiz , country	terça-feira , Tuesday
o papel , paper	sexta-feira , Friday
docil , docile	facil , easy
difficil , difficult	grande , great
feroz , ferocious	
são , are (<i>permanently</i>)	tenho , I have
estão , are (<i>temporarily</i>)	sahe , comes out

1. Os animaes são ferozes. 2. Tenho dois anzões.
 3. As flores são muito bonitas. 4. Os irmãos tem os papeis. 5. Os paizes e as nações são grandes. 6. As lições são difficeis. 7. Os cavallos são animaes doceis. 8. A lição é facil. 9. É uma espada comprida. 10. O jornal sahe terças e sextas-feiras. 11. Os jornaes do paiz são todos diarios.

1. The nations are great. 2. I have difficult lessons.
 3. The sisters have easy lessons. 4. The brothers have fish-hooks. 5. The papers are on the chair. 6. Horses are docile. 7. The flowers are beautiful. 8. The books are easy. 9. The laws of the land.

Give the plurals of the following:

o cão , dog	a dor , pain	o ladrão , thief
o cidadão , citizen	o funil , funnel	o nariz , nose
a cor , color	o general , general	o pão , bread (<i>loaf</i>)

VIII

GENDER OF NOUNS

(See § 24-31, pages 30-38)

VOCABULARY — NOUNS OF OPPOSITE SEX

o moço , young man	a moça , young woman
o francez , Frenchman	a franceza , French woman
o professor , (male) teacher	a professora , (female) teacher
o menino , boy	a menina , girl
o gallo , cock	a gallinha , hen
o barão , baron	a baroneza , baroness
o boi , ox	a vacca , cow
o rapaz , boy	a rapariga , girl
o barro , clay	a barra , bar (<i>of stream, of iron</i>)
o porto , port	a porta , door
o caso , case	a casa , house
o solo , soil	a sola , sole (<i>leather</i>)
o ponto , point, place	a ponta , end
	a ponte , bridge
agradeço , I thank	
este (<i>m.</i>), esta (<i>f.</i>), this	estes (<i>m.</i>), estas (<i>f.</i>), these
fertil , fertile	perto , near
grosso (<i>m.</i>), -a (<i>f.</i>), thick	doente , ill
fechado -a , closed	o campo , field

1. O francez tem um boi, uma vacca, duas gallinhas, e um gallinheiro. 2. A professora é uma senhora bonita. 3. Os casos são muito difíceis. 4. As casas brancas são as mais bonitas. 5. O solo deste paiz é muito fertil. 6. Este professor é filho do barão e da baroneza. 7. A sola é grossa; a porta é larga, mas está fechada. 8. O professor francez está doente em uma casa perto do porto. 9. Esta professora fala inglez perfeitamente. 10. O actor casou-se aqui nesta mesma casa quando era ainda muito moço. 11. Agradeço a amabilidade. 12. O pagem foi buscar (has gone for) o mappa.

IX

RELATED AND UNRELATED NOUNS OF
OPPOSITE SEX

(See § 28-31, pages 34-38)

VOCABULARY

o modo , manner, style	a moda , fashion
o banho , bath	a banha , lard
o prato , plate	a prata , silver
o lente , lecturer	a lente , lens
o capital , capital (<i>money</i>)	a capital , capital (<i>of a state</i>)
o cura , curate	a cura , cure

1. Já não é moda. 2. Este modo de escrever não convem. 3. O navio chegou ao porto hontem. 4. As portas desta casa são bem largas. 5. No caso contrario o lente voltará á capital. 6. Elle me fez presente de um prato de prata. 7. Sola grossa é que vale a pena. 8. A barra ficou completamente entupida com a grande quantidade de barro trazido pelas aguas do rio. 9. A industria da zona é a criação de gado e fabrico de queijos, porem em escala muito pequena. 10. Meu tio e minha tia estão doentes. 11. O rei e a rainha da Italia. 12. Chegou uma moça chamada Nicota com uma rapariga para criada. 13. Tal pai tal filho; tal filho tal pai. 14. O barão e a baroneza são nossos vizinhos. 15. Repartira largamente os fructos das suas conquistas.

1. The fashion has changed. 2. The port of Bahia is large and deep. 3. The case is bad. 4. Bello Horizonte is the new capital of the state of Minas Geraes. 5. The railway track was covered with mud. 6. The curate lost the lens. 7. The bath is very cold. 8. Here is the plate. 9. There is no (não ha) lard.

X

SUFFIXES — AUGMENTATIVES

(See § 32-35, pages 38-41)

VOCABULARY

o caixão , big box	a caixa , ¹ little box
o dinheiro , money	um dinheirão , a great deal of money
o fosforo , match	a cidade , city
o gato , cat	a mulher , woman
o livro , book	a mulherona , big woman
com fome , hungry (with hunger)	
tenho , I have	temos , we have
tens , thou hast	tendes , you have
tem , he (she, it) has	teem , they have

1. Os meninos tem uma caixinha de fosforos. 2. Esta mulherona tem um gatinho pequenino. 3. O francez tem um dinheirão. 4. O caixão é muito grande. 5. A caixa está na porta da casinha. 6. Tenho um gallo pequeno e uma gallinha pequenina. 7. Temos perto da cidade uma casa com um portão. 8. Aquelle figurão é um recém-chegado. 9. Este rapagão é meu camarada. 10. Que narigão. 11. Que mulherão!

1. The man has two big boxes of matches. 2. We have a little house in the city. 3. The little book is quite pretty. 4. I have a very, very small cat. 5. The little horse is hungry. 6. The handsome woman has a beautiful little foot. 7. The little rat is in a little box. 8. There is a little house near the road. 9. These little potatoes are dear. 10. The consul is a notable and venerable man.

¹ Moraes says that **caixa** is longer than wide and that it is called **caixa** when full, and **caixão** when empty.

XI

DIMINUTIVES

(See § 36-38, pages 41-42)

VOCABULARY

o cachorro , dog	o vapor , steamer
o carro , cart, wagon	a coitadinha , poor little girl
o morro , hill	a conta , account
o pé , foot	a lagoa , lake
o pedaço , piece	a luz , light
o pinto , little chick	a roda , wheel

1. A criança cortou a mãozinha. 2. Um vaporzinho navega esta lagoazinha. 3. Aquelle carrinho quebrou a rodinha. 4. O cachorrinho perdeu-se no matto. 5. Ha dois morrinhos logo á entrada do porto. 6. Quem foi que matou o pintinho? 7. A luzinha do dia nascente. 8. Coitado do gatinho! 9. Pedro perdeu os livrinhos. 10. A senhorinha vai á escola sosinha. 11. O coronel era um velho robusto com grandes mãos cabelludas. 12. O baixinho é muito malcreado. 13. Como vai Joãozinho? Melhorou, mas ainda está fraquinho. 14. Sosinho alli perto da capelinha de S. Matheus. 15. Os livrinhos são bonitinhos. 16. Coitadinho!

1. My small son. 2. I have a small piece of bread. 3. The little cat and the small dog. 4. The small steamer on the little river. 5. The little hill near the road. 6. The little ducks are in the water. 7. I have bought some small fish for our dinner. 8. A little plate of rice, a little piece of meat, and a small glass of wine are enough. 9. I have a short letter from my son.

XII

ADJECTIVES

(See § 39-41, pages 43-44)

VOCABULARY

o chá , tea	o marido , husband
o estudante , student	o pão , bread
o leite , milk	a lingua , language
azul , blue	não , not
contente , pleased	preguiçoso , lazy
diligente , diligent	preto , black (man)
feio , ugly	que , than
gosto , I like	rico , rich
hoje , to-day	sempre , always
mais , more	tambem , also
mau , bad	velho , old

1. — A secca: «Quem, pela primeira vez, percorre o sertão nessa quadra, depois de longa sêcca, sente confranger-se-lhe a alma até os ultimos refólhos em face dessa inanicação da vida, desse immenso holocausto da terra.

É mais funebre de que um cemitério. Na cidade dos mortos as lousas estão cercadas por uma vegetação, que viça e floresce; mas aqui a vida abandona a terra, e toda essa região, que se estende por centenas de leguas, não é mais do que o vasto jazigo de uma natureza extincta e o sepulchro da propria criação.

Das torrentes caudáes restam apenas os leitos estanques, onde não se percebe mais nem vestigios da agua que os assoberbava. Sábe-se que alli houve um rio pela depressão, as vezes imperceptivel, do terreno e pela areia alva e fina, que o enxurro lavou.» — JOSÉ DE ALENCAR.

2. De noite todos os gatos são pardos. 3. Sou um homem chão. 4. Gosto de pão preto.

XIII

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

(See § 42-46, pages 44-47)

VOCABULARY

alto , high	o mais alto , the highest
bello , handsome	a mais bella , the handsomest
	melhor , better
bom , good	optimo , o melhor , } best, very good
agradavel , agreeable	mais agradavel , more agreeable
facil , easy	os mais facéis , the easiest (<i>pl.</i>)
amavel , amiable	o lugar , place
feliz , fortunate	o mais feliz , the most fortunate
grande , great	maior , greater
civilizado , civilized	maiorzinho , a little bit greater
visto , seen	

1. O morro alto é mais agradável. 2. Os homens mais agradáveis. 3. É mais fácil ficar aqui. 4. Meu amigo é o homem mais feliz que conheço. 5. Melhor o dia, melhor o serviço. 6. As nações mais civilizadas do mundo. 7. É o lugar mais agradável que tenho visto. 8. As senhoras mais bellas não são sempre as mais agradáveis. 9. É lindíssima a cidade vista de noite do alto da serra. 10. O clima é pessimo; é o peor que conheço. 11. O ultimo anno deste celeberrimo poeta. 12. Este paiz é um dos mais civilizados de mundo. 13. O governador falou com a maior affabilidade. 14. Desejo uma casaca de panno mais fino, e um pouco mais escuro. 15. Não ha a minima duvida. 16. Devia morrer mais cedo do que eu proprio imaginára. 17. A lingua portugueza é riquissima.

XIV

NUMERALS

(See § 55-64, pages 50-55)

VOCABULARY

o anno, the year	a independencia, independence
o mez, the month	a semana, the week
o dia, the day	a noite, the night
o minuto, the minute	a hora, the hour
o seculo, the century	a sala, the hall
o trabalho, the work	a janella, the window
o quarto, the room	um milreis, one milreis
	um conto de reis, one conto of reis (one thousand milreis)
são , there are (it is)	meu (<i>m.</i>), minha (<i>f.</i>), } my
quanto , how much	meus (<i>pl.</i>), minhas (<i>pl.</i>), }
custou , it cost	seu (<i>m.</i>), sua (<i>f.</i>), } your, his, her,
Junho , June	seus (<i>pl.</i>), suas (<i>pl.</i>), } its, their
Novembro , November	Março , March
Setembro (<i>m.</i>), September	

1. Que horas são? São tres e meia; não quatro horas e vinte minutos. 2. Hoje é sete de Setembro, o dia de independencia. 3. A semana tem sete dias e outras tantas noites, e o anno tem trezentos e sesenta e cinco dias. 4. O seculo tem cem annos. 5. Minha casa tem duas salas e seis quartos, e custou oito contos duzentos e quinze milreis. 6. Quanto custou seu livrinho? 7. Custou um milreis; mas custou treze dias de trabalho tambem.

8. Trinta dias tem Novembro
Abril, Junho e Setembro;
Vinte e oito só tem um,
E os demais tem trinta e um.

9. O dia sete de Setembro de mil nove centos e dez é dia de independencia nacional do Brasil.

XV

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

(See § 65-75, pages 56-61)

VOCABULARY

amar, to love
dar, to give
falar, to speak

amo, I love
amas, thou lovest
ama, he, she, it loves
amamos, we love
amaes, ye love
amam, they love

devagar, slowly
mais, more
de mais, too much
menos, less
de menos, too little

gostar, to like
querer, to wish
trabalhar, to work

dou, I give
das, thou givest
da, he, she, it gives

a senhoria, lordship
a agua, water
o conselho, advice
a ave, bird
a mercê, mercy
comtigo, with thee
a excellencia, excellency

1. Elle fala commigo. 2. Eu trabalho, mas elle fala.
 3. Gostas de pão? 4. Não lhe dou dinheiro. 5. Elle
 perseguia as aves; eu perseguia-o a elle. 6. O senhor
 fala devagar. 7. A minha familia chama-me poeta;
 os visinhos chamam-me tolo. 8. Agradeço lh'a, e afago-a.
 9. Ella gosta de falar comtigo. 10. Dou-lhe este con-
 selho. 11. A Senhora gosta de me dar conselho.
 12. Vossa Excellencia me da conselhos de mais. 13. Disse-
 lhe o meu nome. O padre repetiu-o tres vezes. 14. Vossa
 Senhoria não a ama. 15. Entre mim e elle não ha questão.
 16. Elle da-lhes um conto de reis. 17. Tres delles estão
 commigo. 18. Não posso ve-lo. 19. Elle não o sabia;
 o trovador não as via.

XVI

POSSESSIVES

(See § 76-83, pages 61-62)

VOCABULARY

o soldado, soldier**o vizinho**, neighbor**a loja**, shop**a ordem**, order**barato**, cheap**caro**, dear**dizer**, to say**digo**, I say**dizes**, thou sayest**diz**, he or she says**o parente**, relative**o general**, general**o advogado**, lawyer**porem**, but, however**pronto**, ready{ **dizemos**, we say{ **digamos**, let us say**dizeis**, you or ye say**dizem**, they say

1. Meu caro amigo diz que a casa d'elle é minha, é sua, é nossa. 2. Meus livros e meus cavallos estão ás suas ordens. 3. Meu caro filho, tua casa é grande de mais, porem é boa. 4. Dizem que meu cavallo é caro, mas que seu é mais barato. 5. Dizem me que os meus vizinhos são vossos bons amigos. 6. O general diz que os seus soldados estão prontos. 7. Digo que não. 8. Meu advogado perdeu a causa. 9. Minha filha diz que vai buscar o seu chapeo. 10. Minhas irmãs dizem que os seus parentes são ricos. 11. Como está meu amigo? 12. Sua Majestade é meu amigo. 13. Estou aqui ás suas ordens.

1. My neighbor says his house is yours. 2. This shop is at your orders. 3. Your friends are mine. 4. You say that my friends and neighbors are yours. 5. All your books and all of hers are ours. 6. My house is very small, but it is at your orders. 7. Our customs are different from yours.

XVII

DEMONSTRATIVES

(See § 84-94, pages 63-65)

VOCABULARY

o irmão , brother	bater , to knock
a fruta , fruit	convem , it suits (<i>impersonal verb</i>)
forte , strong	servir , to serve
o pobre , poor man	a tinta , ink
cego , blind	a penna , pen
o cego , blind man	o emprego , employment
a cega , blind woman	

1. Vinte dias e outras tantas noites seguiu-o de longe, até o ver sumir-se nas ruas tortuosas e escuras do coração da cidade. 2. Este homem e as filhas d'elle são pobres. 3. Aquelle moço é cego. 4. Essa mulher é uma cega pobre. 5. Ella é uma pobre cega. 6. Disto não gosto. 7. Estas frutas não são boas. 8. Estes soldados são mais fortes que aquelles pobres cegos. 9. Isto não me convem. 10. Aquella tinta e esta penna não servem para escrever a carta. 11. O nome unico por que chamou foi o de seu filho. 12. Fulano diz que é a mesmíssima coisa. 13. Não gosto disto. 14. Este senhor é o autor deste livro.

1. This poor boy is blind. 2. That blind woman is poor. 3. This blind man is stronger than his brother. 4. This dog is stronger than that one. 5. These books are better than those. 6. There is no such person here. 7. At this place and at this moment it is not possible. 8. This occasion is best. 9. Take these chairs away. 10. Those poor men have no employment.

XVIII

INTERROGATIVES

(See § 95, page 65)

VOCABULARY

o rumo, bearing, direction**o caminho**, road**a mala**, trunk, suit case**a rua**, street**a opinião**, opinion**curto**, short**para**, for (to)

1. Qual é o caminho para a cidade? 2. Quem falla? Sou eu, seu amigo. 3. Que tem no caixão? 4. Quem é? 5. Qual d'elles é o mais prudente? 6. Qual é a sua opinião? 7. Em que rua é a sua casa? 8. Qual é o caminho mais curto? 9. Quem bate? 10. Quem sabe não sou eu. 11. Quaes são minhas malas? 12. Quem foi que deixou a porta aberta? 13. Seja quem for, não convem. 14. Quaes são as nossas cadeiras? 15. Qual é o meu chapeo? 16. Que pena! Que vergonha! 17. Quem lhe disse? 18. Que horas são?

1. Which is the road to your house? 2. What is it you say? 3. Who is it speaking (who speaks)? 4. I am the one who is speaking (who speaks is I). 5. In which direction is the city from here? 6. Who knows? 7. Which are the best fruits? 8. Who was it that took away my pen? 9. Who is that knocking? 10. Which of these three chairs is mine? 11. What time is it? 12. Who is the owner of this house? 13. Who knows? 14. Which of the two is the better one? 15. What a pity! 16. In this case I cannot go. 17. This employment does not suit me. 18. It is hard to believe what I saw. 19. It was in this river that he was drowned.

XIX

RELATIVES

(See § 96-99, page 66)

VOCABULARY

o dono , owner	a certeza , certainty
saber , to know	a instrução , instruction
sei , I know	possível , possible
sabes , thou knowest	há , is (<i>impersonal 3d sing. haver</i>)
sabe , he knows	com , with
sabemos , we know	quem , who
sabeis , ye know	livre , free
sabem , they know	verdadeiramente , truly
	sem , without

1. O que digo é que não é possível. 2. Não sei quem é o dono desta casa. 3. O senhor sabe de quem é este livro? 4. Não sei com certeza. 5. O livro que tem é o melhor que há. 6. Instrução, sem a qual o homem não será jamais verdadeiramente livre. 7. Quem tudo quer tudo perde. 8. Que é isso? 9. Os que falam. 10. Quem bem semeia, bem colhe. 11. Quem diz o que quer, ouve o que não quer. 12. Quem sabe qual é a loja? 13. Tal foi o sonho do futuro que o Senhor me enviou n'uma noite de agonia. 14. Que é a caixa economica, essa arvore que produz taes fructos de benção? 15. Os mais bellos são os que vêm do estado da Bahia.

1. You do not know which is the best road. 2. It is not possible to say with certainty. 3. I do not know whose house that is. 4. The books which I have are the best. 5. A man whom I esteem. 6. With whom are you talking? 7. Whose house is that? 8. He who has most wants most.

XX

INDEFINITES

(See § 100-102, pages 67-69)

VOCABULARY

o mundo, world	a verdade, truth
o presente, present	qual, which
o espaço, space, room	qualquer, either
a coisa, } thing	o senhor, sir, gentleman
or coisa, }	nada, nothing
desejar, to desire	algum -uma, some
ter, to have	

1. Alguem lhe deu este presente. 2. O senhor tem alguma coisa boa? 3. Não tenho nada, e não desejo nada. 4. Sem dizer nada. 5. Algumas das de que fala tem muito pouco espaço. 6. Cada um tem a sua opinião. 7. Quaes destas tres quer? 8. Qualquer delas; não sei qual é a melhor. 9. Não quero nenhum. 10. Tudo está muito bom. 11. Gosto deste mais que nenhum outro. 12. Uns dizem que sim; outros que não. 13. Ninguém sabe qual é a verdade. 14. Traga alguma coisa para comer em quanto estou escrevendo umas cartas.

1. No one knows which is the shortest road. 2. Each one has his own opinion. 3. All the world knows that no man is prudent. 4. I know nothing about this. 5. Either one of these books is good. 6. You know more than any one else. 7. I don't want either the one or the other. 8. Whoever it may be he cannot enter here. 9. Much obliged. Not at all. 10. I want to get there as soon as possible. 11. We shall be there in a little while.

XXI

REGULAR VERBS

(See § 103-107, pages 69-75)

VOCABULARY

achar, to find
andar, to walk
atirar, to shoot
bolir, to disturb
cantar, to sing
comer, to eat
deixar, to leave
destruir, to destroy
durar, to last
encher, to fill

o altar, altar
o maribondo, wasp
o tempero, seasoning (*of food*)

entrar, to enter
esquecer, to forget
estudar, to study
ficar, to remain
mudar, to change
partir, to depart
responder, to reply
unir, to unite
vender, to sell

a cabeça, head
a romaria, pilgrimage
a relíquia, relic

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Falo como parto. | 8. Duraram, responde- |
| 2. Falo, como, e parto. | rem, uniram. |
| 3. Elle fala, come, e parte. | 9. Mude, encha, bula. |
| 4. Ella cantava, respondia, | 10. Andasse, enchesse, bu- |
| partia. | lisse. |
| 5. Achou, vendeu, uniu. | 11. Entra, come, parte. |
| 6. Estudarei, encherei, | 12. Deixando, vendando, |
| bulirei. | destruindo. |
| 7. Ficariamos, encheriamos. | 13. Mudada, esquecida, |
| | unida. |
14. Falar sem pensar é atirar sem apontar. 15. Elle anda com a cabeça inchada (*slang*). 16. Fiquei mais morto que vivo (cançado). 17. Não bule com casa de maribondos. 18. Gallinha gorda não precisa tempero.

XXII

REGULAR VERBS WITH ORTHOGRAPHIC
AND PHONETIC CHANGES

(See § 108, pages 75-76)

VOCABULARY

abrançar , to contain	entregar , to deliver
agradecer , to thank	erguer , to raise
arrancar , to pull out, up	finçar , to drive in
atingir , to attain	 fingir , to pretend
atracar , to make fast	fugir , to flee
balançar , to balance	jogar , to play, throw
brincar , to play	lançar , to throw
cançar , to tire	pedir , to request
distinguir , to distinguish	pregar , to nail
eleger , to elect	rasgar , to tear
emmagrecer , to grow thin	rogar , to ask
empallidecer , to turn pale	salgar , to salt
empecer , to hinder	valer , to value, to be worth
a demissão , dismissal	
a esmola , charity	
a manha , habit, whim	

1. **fiquei**, **fique**, **finquei**, **finque**; **brinquei**, **brinque**.
2. **entreguei**, **entregue**; **roguei**, **rogue**, **joguei**, **jogue**.
3. **elejo**, **eleja**, **elejas**; **abranjo**, **abranja**.
4. **attinjo**, **attinja**; **finjo**, **finja**, **fujo**, **fuja**.
5. **ergo**; **distingo**; **lancei**, **lance**; **cancei**, **cance**; **balancei**, **balance**.
6. **agradeço**, **agradeça**; **emmagreço**, **emmagreça**; **empallideço**, **empallideça**; **empeço**, **empeça**.
7. **foge**, **cobre**, **sobe**; **durmo**, **sigo**, **sirvo**.
8. **Pedi minha demissão e segui caminho.** 9. **O cavallo fugiu a noite passada.** 10. **Uma esmola pelo amor de Deus.**

XXIII

THE AUXILIARY VERBS

(See § 109, pages 76-81)

VOCABULARY

o sul, south	a opinião, opinion
o norte, north	a viagem, voyage, trip
o dever, duty	a febre, fever
o olho, eye	satisfeito, satisfied
o caminho, road	já, at once
o serviço, service	enjooado, seasick
ter, to have	acabar, to finish
haver, }	embarcar, to embark
ser, } to be	seguir, to follow
estar, }	seguir viagem, to go forward
aguentar, to endure	

1. Tenho feito meu dever. 2. Tendo acabado o serviço, segui viagem. 3. O nosso amigo está para embarcar já. 4. Não ha quem possa aguentar este serviço. 5. Sou norte-americano, vou embarcar para a America do Sul. 6. Estou cansado; sou cego de um olho. 7. O que é que tem feito aqui todo o dia? 8. Sou de opinião que não ha caminho. 9. Tenho estado muito satisfeito com esta viagem. 10. Como tem passado estes dois dias? 11. Está clara que elle não énem portuguez nem brasileiro; pode ser (que seja) inglez.

1. He was much pleased with the trip to the mines. 2. We have done everything possible. 3. I am a blind man. 4. I am seasick. 5. I am Brazilian consul at Philadelphia. 6. I have to go aboard the steamer tomorrow at ten o'clock sharp. 7. I have to write some letters before embarking. 8. There was a terrible storm the next day.

XXIV

IRREGULAR VERBS

(See § 110-113, pages 81-88)

VOCABULARY

o azeite, oil**o assucar**, sugar**a carne**, meat**a batata**, potato**a garrafa**, bottle**a lata**, tin can**a pena**, trouble**caber**, to hold**prestar**, to lend

1. Digo que não. 2. Dou o que tenho. 3. Dei dinheiro ao cego que pediu uma esmola. 4. Creio que a água não cabe na garrafa. 5. Faço todo o possível, mas não posso fazer isto. 6. Pode vir quando quizer; o que pediu está feito. 7. Sei que puz o chapéo aqui na mesa; vai busca-lo. 8. Roupa feita quasi nunca presta. 9. Não quero saber d'isto; vou pedir minha demissão. 10. Vejo que não vale a pena ir la hoje. 11. Trouxeram o que pedi: carne, batatas e uma garrafa de azeite. 12. Vim pela estrada nova; voltarei pela picada velha. 13. Fui, irei, ia, fora, indo, vão. 14. Venho, rio, ouço, peço, redimo, vou, meço, tenho, valho, vejo, trago, quero, sei, ponho, perco, faço, estou, digo, caibo, dou. 15. Dei, coube, disse, estive, fui, fiz, houve, pude, pus, prouve, quiz, soube, tive, trouxe, vi, ouvi, pedi. 16. Dize-me com quem andas, dir-te-hei as manhas que tem. 17. Cada um sabe o que lhe convem. 18. Vou ver si este assucar cabe naquella lata. 19. Em terra de cegos quem tem um olho é rei. 20. Não ha rosa sem espinhos, nem amores sem ciumes. 21. O amor vae-se, a amisade fica. 22. Quem tem officio não morre de fome.

XXV

VARIABLE PARTICIPLES

(See § 114-118, pages 88-90)

VOCABULARY

o convite , invitation	a palha , straw
o jogo , game	a roupa , clothes
o prazer , pleasure	a telha , tile
o sol , sun	limpo , clean
o vulcão , volcano	quatro , four
a facada , knife cut	torto , crooked
a machina , machine	
acceitar , to accept	imprimir , to print
accender , to set fire, light	limpar , to clean
enxugar , to dry	matar , to kill
frigir , to fry	pagar , to pay
ganhar , to gain	soltar , to loose
	torcer , to twist

1. Este é um negocio torto. 2. As ruas desta cidade estão bem limpas. 3. As ruas são limpas por uma machina de quatro rodas. 4. O convite foi acceito com muito prazer. 5. A roupa foi logo enxugada no sol. 6. O dinheiro foi ganho no jogo. 7. O soldado foi morto por uma facada. 8. A conta ja está paga. 9. Os cavallos forão soltos pelo camarada. 10. O livro foi impresso no Rio de Janeiro. 11. Mande trazer uns ovos fritos. 12. A nova edição dos Lusiadas foi correcta e dada a luz por Paulino de Souza no anno mil oito centos e setenta e tres. 13. O relógio tinha dado onze pancades.

1. Is the house covered with straw or with tiles? 2. Do you like eggs fried? 3. This book was printed in Lisbon. 4. He was elected federal deputy two years ago. 5. I was arrested in a village of Alagoas. 6. The money was spent. 7. The candle is lit; the account is paid.

XXVI

DEFECTIVE VERBS; SUBJECTS OF VERBS

(See § 119, page 91)

VOCABULARY

o algodão , cotton	chegar , to arrive
o animal , animal	marcar , to mark, set
o patriota , patriot	jazer , to lie (down)
a felicidade , happiness	planter , to plant
a cabra , goat	poder , to be able, can
a perspectiva , prospect	prazer , to please
a secca , drought	tratar , to care for
as trevas (<i>pl. only</i>), darkness	
mortal , <i>pl. mortaes</i> , mortal	
apenas , merely	outro , other
denso -a, dense	quão , how
	se , if (<i>sometimes written si</i>)

1. Nem homem, nem boi, nem cabra pode aguentar a secca. 2. Tratar animaes, e plantar algodão é o forte deste homem. 3. Chegou um e outro. 4. Se a luz que ha em ti são trevas, quão densas são as trevas. 5. Um e outro chegou no dia marcado. 6. Aqui jazem os restos mortaes de um patriota. 7. Praz a Deus. 8. Aqui jaz o corpo apenas do Marquez de Maricá. 9. Tanto a vida como a morte offereciam uma perspectiva de felicidade. 10. Bem diversô era Rosas. As suas paixões flammejavam á luz do sol no pampa vasto. Accessivel, ardente, emprehendedor, cubiçoso de estima, sua influencia começou a se fundar pela energia da sua iniciativa e pelo brilho das suas acções. 11. So restava para o camareiro o morrer, e para sua senhoria o ir deitar-se. 12. Deus perdôe a quem me torceu a vocação. 13. Ir a pé não me convem.

XXVII

IMPERSONAL VERBS

(See § 121, pages 93-94)

VOCABULARY

o bacalháu , codfish	bastar , to suffice
o queijo , cheese	
o sal , salt	esterlina , sterling
a libra , pound	fora , outside
a pimenta , pepper	frio -a, cold

1. Fez frio esta noite. 2. Anoitece; chove; troveja.
3. Ha quem sabe (*or* saiba). 4. Não ha remedio. 5. Seja como for. 6. Pode ser que haja. 7. Não faz mal.
8. Acconteceu que choveu naquelle dia. 9. Não convem fazer isto; não me convem. 10. Não me importa.
11. Parece que não vale a pena. 12. É facil saber se é verdade. 13. Faz muito calor aqui ao sol. 14. Parece me que é melhor ficar aqui. 15. Quem me dera que fosse assim. 16. Não chega a ter vinte libras esterlinas.
17. Basta um pouco de bacalháu, uns ovos fritos, sal, pimenta e queijo. 18. Não ha leite para o café. 19. Custa a crer que não haja vinho; esta agua não chega.

1. They say that it is cold outside there. 2. It is raining and blowing. 3. No matter, let us go take a walk. 4. It is a week to-day since I had a walk. 5. It is not necessary. 6. It is easy to travel by steamer. 7. There is no help for it. 8. There is no doubt about it. 9. It is not worth while. 10. It rained all night. 11. It is very hot here in the sun. 12. No matter; there is no help for it. 13. That will do. 14. They say it is raining, but I do not care.

XXVIII

OBJECTS OF VERBS; SPECIAL USES

(See § 123-124, pages 96-98)

VOCABULARY

o calor , heat	amar , to love
o cavallo , horse	cobrir , to cover
o ladrão , thief	contar , to tell, recount
o lobo , the wolf	enfraquecer , to grow weak
o negociante , merchant	engolir , to swallow
o peixe , fish	jantar , to dine
o poeta , poet	pegar , to catch
o tributo , tribute	pintar , to paint
a admiração , admiration	principiar , to begin
a historia , story	sentir , to feel
a patria , native land	assim , thus, so
a rã , frog	realmente , genuinely

1. Um ladrão matou ao negociante. 2. O peixe engoliu a rã; á rã engoliu o peixe; ao peixe engoliu a rã. 3. Elle principiou a falar. 4. Pegáram me o chapeo. 5. Principiou a cantar. 6. Acabei de jantar. 7. Aquelle moço anda a contar historias. 8. O dono mandou pegar os cavallos. 9. A casa está coberta de telhas e pintada de branco. 10. Sinto me enfraquecido pelo calor. 11. Assim cada portuguez que ama realmente a sua patria deve um tributo de reconhecimento e de admiração ao poeta. 12. Uma febre violenta o sustentava. 13. Judas abraçou a Christo, mas outros o prenderam. 14. A guerra que declaramos aos outros nos gasta e consome a nós mesmos.

1. John visited Sr. Rabello and his wife. 2. The dog followed the wolf; the wolf followed the dog. 3. When did you begin to speak Portuguese? 4. Pedro saw a tiger leave the woods.

XXIX

PERIPHRASTIC VERB-PHRASES

(See § 125, pages 98-99)

VOCABULARY

o barulho , noise	acordar , to wake
o dinheiro , money	arrojar , to drag
o martello , hammer	buscar , to fetch
o mato , forest	corrigir , to correct
o medico , physician	fazer , to do, make
o tempo , time	gastar , to spend
	ler , to read
a arma , (fire)arm	mandar , to order
a cruzada , crusade	perder , to lose
a legua , league	soffrer , to suffer
	cuidadosamente , carefully

1. Tenho andado uma legua a pé. 2. Elle tem feito tudo o possível. 3. Elle tem soffrido. 4. Mande buscar um martello. 5. É de crer que o tempo ha de mudar-se. 6. O nosso tio andou perdido no matto. 7. A conta foi paga pelo medico. 8. O nosso dinheiro foi gasto na viagem. 9. Vamos chegando. 10. Fica sabendo que a coisa ja está feita. 11. A primeira cruzada tinha arrojado para a Syria cem mil homens d'armas. 12. O poema foi lido e cuidadosamente corrigido seis vezes. 13. Deus tinha contado os seus dias. 14. A lingua tupi foi modernamente estudada por Baptista Caetano.

1. I have been impressed by his book. 2. He was awakened by the noise. 3. We ordered the horses brought. 4. Our friend is still speaking. 5. Where did you leave your hat? 6. I have left it on a chair on deck. 7. I am doing what they ordered. 8. I know that I shall not go there to-day.

XXX

REFLEXIVE VERBS

(See § 126, pages 99-100)

VOCABULARY

o bilhete , ticket	alugar , to rent
o devedor , debtor	calar , to hush
o engenheiro , engineer	chamar , to call
o favor , favor	comprar , to buy
o principe , prince	decidir , to decide
o supplicante , petitioner	deitar , to lie down
a dôr , pain	despedir , to take leave
a rua , street	morrer , to die
incommodado , put out	queixar , to complain
abrir , to open	retirar , to retire

1. Elle está se queixando. 2. Cala-te, menino. 3. Vou despидir-me de meus amigos. 4. Vá-se embora; vá se deitar. 5. Parece me que é melhor retirar-se. 6. Depois elle arrependeu-se. 7. A casa queimou-se. 8. Aluga-se uma casa nesta rua. 9. Achou-se muito incommodado com este negocio. 10. Não se sabe donde vem. 11. A porta abriu-se, e o principe appareceu. 12. Como se chama este cachorro? 13. Eu me chamo José. 14. Os bilhetes compram se nesta casa. 15. Decidiu-se o caso a favor do supplicante. 16. Elles morreram acreditando-se os devedores. 17. Podem se resumir em poucas palavras as medidas propostas pelo sr. engenheiro. 18. As viagens em boa companhia fazem-se rapidamente.

1. Go away and do not return again. 2. The case cannot be decided to-day. 3. A horse was bought. 4. It is not known where he lives. 5. Know that it is I who am speaking. 6. I ordered breakfast prepared, and immediately afterwards we left. 7. You may retire; I want to take my leave of the prince.

XXXI

IMPERATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, INDICATIVE,
AND PERSONAL INFINITIVE

(See § 127-133, pages 100-102)

VOCABULARY

o caipira , backwoodsman	dialogar , to converse
o zelo , zeal	permitter , to permit
a chuva , rain	proteger , to protect
a duvida , doubt	pugnar , to fight
a esperança , hope	trazer , to fetch
Deus , God	vir , to come
amanhã , to-morrow	voltar , to return
ca , here	nenhum -uma , no, none
depressa , quickly	prompto or pronto , ready
embora , away	talvez , perhaps

1. Não fale tão alto. 2. Traz o meu chapéu depressa. 3. Não deve andar na chuva sem guarda-chuva. 4. Va buscar o livro. 5. Venha cá, meu filho. 6. Va-se embora. 7. Dize-lhe que não venha amanhã. 8. Quem sabe si elle vai ou si não vai. 9. Elle vai; não ha duvida nenhuma. 10. Talvez esteja aqui. 11. Ficamos contentes por acharmos tudo prompto. 12. «Não permitta Deus que eu morra sem que eu volte para lá.» 13. Julio ouviu dois caipiras dialogarem sob a janella do seu quarto.

1. Don't say that. 2. Fetch me a glass of water. 3. Go fetch my hat. 4. Who knows where it is? 5. Perhaps it is in the dining-room. 6. I don't know whether I shall ever come back again. 7. No one knows better than I do. 8. Let's go.

XXXII

ADVERBS

(See § 134-135, pages 103-107)

VOCABULARY

a bondade , kindness	baixo , low
a palavra , word	depois , afterward
adiar , to postpone	donde , whence
adoecer , to become ill	logo , at once
possuir , to possess	onde , where
trovejar , to thunder	positivo , positive
	senão , except

1. De vez em quando vi uma luz, mas só de longe.
 2. D'aqui a pouco vou me embora. 3. Logo depois partiu a cavallo. 4. Não ha quem possa aguentar essa viagem.
 5. Sim, senhor, creio que sim; não ha duvida. 6. Elle não diz senão poucas palavras. 7. Tenha a bondade de falar mais baixo. 8. Antes de partir elle adoeceu, de modo que foi preciso adiar a viagem uns vinte dias, mais ou menos. 9. Trovejou de vez em quando. 10. Venha cá João; deixe o chapeo ahi na mesa. 11. Onde vem e para onde vai. 12. Não possuo no em tanto dado algum positivo a este respeito. 13. O chão que pisas, a cada instante te offerece a cova. Pisemos de vagar. 14. Conheço-o por dentro e por fora. 15. O cavalleiro caiu de chofre na realidade.

1. He arrived in the night. 2. I never saw and I never hope to see such an animal. 3. I know neither the one nor the other. 4. You speak much better than he. 5. Please speak lower; please speak louder. 6. Severino made a trip around Brazil. 7. There is neither bread nor water. 8. Nowadays it is better to buy cheap and sell dear.

XXXIII

NEGATION AND INTERROGATION

(See § 136-138, pages 107-108)

VOCABULARY

o ferro , iron	a bibliotheca , library
o lapis , pencil	a botina , boot
o negocio , business	a estrada , road
o senador , senator	a população , population
o trem , train	estrada de ferro , railway
o volume , volume	
calçar , to put on (<i>shoes, socks, etc.</i>)	comprido , long
crer , to believe	nacional , national
conhecer , to be acquainted with	pois não , certainly

1. Não posso calçar esta botina. 2. Nem um nem outro chegou neste trem. 3. Nunca vi aquelle senador. 4. Queira ter a bondade de passar o pão. 5. Pois não. 6. Não tenho nada com este negocio. 7. Não vou la mais não. 8. Não conheço nem um nem outro. 9. Não lhe disse quasi nada. 10. Não sei não, senhor. 11. Qual é a estrada de ferro mais comprida do Brasil? 12. A informação é que não mata a honra de ninguém. 13. Elle não diz sinão poucas palavras. 14. Não vivo sinão para ti. 15. Que é isso? 16. Não tem nada; não ha novidade. 17. Qual delles é o melhor?

1. Whose pencil is this? 2. I don't know; I am not acquainted with any one here. 3. I know nothing about this business. 4. What is the population of Pernambuco? 5. Nobody knows. 6. I never was there; I never saw the place. 7. Which is the largest and most important city in the country? 8. Is this your book? 9. No, sir, it is not. 10. Where is it then? I do not know.

XXXIV

PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS

(See § 139-145, pages 108-114)

VOCABULARY

o deputado, deputy	a povoação, village
o meio, middle	a região, region
o pai, father	a rocha, rock
os pais, parents	a seda, silk
a baroneza, baroness	disseminar, to scatter
a bota, boot	viajar, to travel
a camada, layer, bed	apesar, in spite of
a carta, letter	capaz, capable, likely
a confiança, confidence	digno, worthy
a educação, education	povoado, peopled (<i>pp. of povoar</i>)
a mica, mica	responsavel, responsible

1. O deputado é homem digno de toda a confiança, mas está doente de uma febre. 2. A serra fica umas vinte leguas distante da villa. 3. É facil de ver que aquelle cavallo que é cego de um olho é capaz de morrer no meio do caminho. 4. A baroneza estava vestida de seda preta. 5. D'aqui a um pouco estamos lá. 6. Não posso ser responsavel pela educação de seu filho. 7. Aquella região é povoada pelos indios bravos. 8. Tenho noticias d'elle de vez em quando. 9. Estou muito cansado de maneira que não devo viajar hoje. 10. Depois que escrevi a carta, montei a cavallo e fui á villa apesar de estar muito doente. 11. A povoação fica distante d'aqui umas vinte duas leguas ou mais.

1. It is easy to see that he is likely to run away. 2. He is at present busy with writing letters. 3. This young man is still dependent upon his parents. 4. He is likely to die of hunger.

XXXV

ABBREVIATIONS

(See § 147, pages 115–116)

VOCABULARY

o barão , baron	a excellencia , excellency
o bispo , bishop	a meia , stocking (<i>abbreviation of</i> <i>meia-calça</i>)
o collega , colleague	a navegação , navigator
o cardeal , cardinal	ignorar , to be ignorant
o collarinho , collar	affectuoso , affectionate
o criado , servant	directamente , directly
o director , director	humilde , humble
o papa , pope	la , there
o par , pair	obrigado , obliged
o sentido , sense, meaning	reverendo , reverend
as calças , trousers	São , } Saint
a camisa , shirt	Santo , }
a companhia , company	

1. De S. Felix fui directamente a S. Paulo, e de la a Sta. Clara pela E. F.
2. Illmo. Exmo. Sr. Dr.
Antº José dos Santos Pinheiro,
M. D. Director da C^{ia} de Navegação.
3. De V. Ex^a,
Amº e cr^{do} obdº.
4. Ex^{mo} e Rev^{mo} Sr. D. Antonio de Macedo Costa,
Dig^{mo} Bispo do Pará.
5. Collega, amº affº e humº servo em J. C.
6. Ill^{mo} e Ex^{mo} Snr., V. Ex^a não ignora que em 8bro. p.p. veio a Roma o Snr. Barão de Penedo. 7. Deus guarde a V. Ex^a. 8. Falle V. S^a ao Papa e ao Cardeal A. n'este sentido. 9. A S. M. I., D. Pedro II., O. D. C. o autor. 10. No caso que V. S. esteja com fome. 11. Não tenho nada que não esteja ás ordens de V. Ex^a.

XXXVI

SIMILARITY OF WORDS

(See § 145, page 113)

For vocabulary see pages 117-118.

1. Como fosse notorio e vulgar o amor de Alvaro a Leonor —.
2. Elle foi nomeado director do collegio.
3. Esta casa é muito ordinaria, e tem as janellas estreitas.
4. O pai delle é meu parente.
5. Pinheiro tirou a sorte grande na loteria do estado. •
6. O alumno assistiu ao espectaculo no dia seguinte.
7. Ascenda a luz e arme minha rede ahi perto da mesa.
8. Quero partir ás quatro horas de madrugada.
9. O artista vendeu as acções conforme o regimento da companhia.
10. Fiquei admirado e desapontado com este negocio.
11. Estamos apreciando a musica.
12. Nossa petição foi deferida pelo ministro.
13. Durou o espectaculo a noite inteira.
14. Apanhei uma constipação no sereno.
15. Tirou uma photographia do gado demandando Goyaz.
16. O parente delle acordou tarde.
17. O caso não é de minha competencia.
18. A casa real de Portugal.
19. Partiu de madrugada pelo vapor á hora marcada.
20. Fica combinado que reuniremos nesta casa particular.
21. Correu a fama a contar os successos pelas mil boccas da defamação.

XXXVII

EXAMPLES OF STYLE

The following are examples of the styles of several of the best writers of Portuguese.

The literary form of the Portuguese of the Bible differs in some essential respects from the language used in every-day life just as it does in English. The following from a late translation of the New Testament will serve as an example.

THE NEW TESTAMENT

«Os Santos Evangelhos e o livro dos actos dos Apostolos, Versão fiel do original Grego» [Rio de Janeiro, 1907] S. Matheus, vi. 1-23. Matthew, vi. 1-23.

«Guardae-vos de fazer as vossas boas obras deante dos homens, para serdes vistos por elles; de outra sorte não tendes recompensa junto de vosso Pae que está nos céos.

Quando, pois, deres esmola, não faças tocar a trombeta deante de ti, como fazem os hypocritas nas synagogas e nas ruas, para serem honrados dos homens; em verdade vos digo que já receberam a sua recompensa. Tu porém, quando deres esmolas, não saiba a tua mão esquerda o que faz a tua direita, para que a tua esmola fique em secreto; e teu Pae que vê em secreto, te retribuirá.

Quando orardes, não sejaes como os hypocritas; porque elles gostam de orar em pé nas synagogas e nos cantos das ruas, para serem vistos dos homens; em verdade vos digo que já receberam a sua recompensa. Tu, porém, quando orares, entra no teu quarto e, fechada a porta,

ora a teu Pae que está em secreto; e teu Pae que vê em secreto, te retribuirá. Quando orares, não useis de repetições desnecessarias como os Gentios; porque pensam que pelo seu muito falar serão ouvidos. Não sejaes, pois, como elles; porque vosso Pae sabe o que vos é necessario antes que lh'o peçaes. Orae, portanto, deste modo:

Pae nosso que estás nos céos;
sanctificado seja o teu nome;
venha o teu reino;
seja feita a tua vontade, assim na terra como no
céo.

O pão nosso de cada dia nos dá hoje;
e perdoa-nos as nossas dividas, assim como nós
tambem perdoamos aos nossos devedores;
e não nos deixes cahir em tentação, mas livra-nos
do mal.

Porque se perdoardes aos homens as suas offensas, tem-
bem vosso Pae celestial vos perdoará; mas se não per-
doardes aos homens, tão pouco vosso Pae perdoará as
vossas offensas.

Quando jejuardes, não tomeis um ar triste como os
hypocritas; porque elles desfiguram os seus rostos para
fazer ver aos homens que elles estão jejuando; em ver-
dade vos digo que já receberam a sua recompensa. Tu,
porém, quando jejuares, unge a cabeça e lava o rosto
para não mostrar aos homens que jejuas, mas sómente a
teu Pae que está em secreto; e teu Pae que vê em secreto,
te retribuirá.

Não ajunteis para vós thesouros na terra, onde a traça
e a ferrugem os consomem, e onde os ladrões penetram e
roubam; mas ajuntae para vós thesouros no céo, onde

nem a traça nem a ferrugem os consomem, e onde os ladrões não penetram nem roubam; porque onde estiver o teu thesouro, ahi estará tambem o teu coração. Os olhos são a luz do corpo. Se elles, pois forem simples, todo o corpo será luminoso; mas se forem maus, todo o teu corpo ficará ás escuras. Se, portanto, a luz que ha em ti, são trevas; quão densas são as trevas!»

XXXVIII

Alexandre Herculano (1810–1877) is a distinguished Portuguese poet, historian, and novelist. The first edition of his classic “*Historia de Portugal*” was published in 1846. The following extracts are from the 6th edition of that work printed at Lisbon in 1901.

(*The First Crusade*. Vol. I, p. 199.)

«Um grande acontecimento, cujas consequencias foram immensas para o progresso da civilisação, preocupava por esse tempo os animos em toda a Europa e em grande parte da Asia. A primeira cruzada, promovida pelo eremita Pedro e pelas eloquentes palavras de Urbano II no concilio de Clermont, tinha arrojado para a Syria cem mil homens d’armas seguidos de uma turba innumeravel de individuos de todas as condições e de ambos os sexos. Depois de longa viagem, em que a miseria, os vicios, as doenças e a guerra reduziram a bem pequeno numero essa multidão desordenada, Jerusalem caíra nas mãos dos cruzados, e os guerreiros que não se tinham armado para a conquista dos lugares sanctos puderam ir ainda, após os mais fervorosos, ajudar a defender a monarchia christan¹ fundada na Palestina e ganhar ahi a

¹ An old form of christã; see § 5, foot-note to n.

gloria e a opulencia ou a remissão de passados crimes, remissão que a igreja concedia com mão larga aos que, pondo sobre o hombro esquerdo a cruz vermelha, se votavam á trabalhosa e arriscada peregrinação do ultramar. Seis annos depois da primeira invasão, em 1101, uma segunda cruzada partiu para o oriente, cujos successos desastrados não impediram que novos peregrinos se fossem precipitar naquelle vasto sorvedouro de quantos homens de fé viva tinha a Europa e tambem de quantas fézes de corrupção, cubiça e ferocidade havia nella. Para as almas crentes ou devoradas de remorsos a Syria era a piscina da reabilitação moral: para os ambiciosos e devassos fonte inexgotavel de fortuna e de deleites. As paixões boas e más ligavam-se num pensamento unico — o demandar o oriente; porque tanto a vida como a morte offereciam ao que partia uma perspectiva de felicidade.»

(The Moors of Spain and Portugal in the twelfth century.
Vol. I, 349-350.)

«Os mahometanos da Peninsula offerecem-nos pelo meiado do século XII mais um desses exemplos, ao mesmo tempo terriveis e salutaes, de que abunda a historia. Naquelle país, seja qual fôr o seu gráu de civilização e poderio, onde fallece o amor da patria, onde os vicios mais hediondos vivem á luz do sol, onde a todas as ambições é licito pretender e esperar tudo, onde a lei, atirada para o charco das ruas pelo pé desdenhoso dos grandes, vai lá servir de juguete ás multidões desenfreiadas, onde a liberdade do homem, a magestade dos principes e as virtudes da familia se converteram em tres grandes mentiras, ha ahi uma nação que vai morrer. A Providencia, que o previu, suscita então outro povo que

venha envolver aquelle cadáver no sudario dos mortos. Pobre, grosseiro, não numeroso, que importa isso? Para pregar as taboas de um ataúde qualquer pequena força basta.»

(The death of Affonso I of Portugal. Vol. I, 463-464.)

«No longo crepusculo de velhice aborrida e enferma, o coração do valente Affonso I ainda pôde dilatar-se pela ultima vez nos contentamentos de uma grande victoria. A sua boa espada repousava havia muito na baina juncto do seu leito de dôr; mas consolá-lo-hia a certeza de que deixava um filho digno delle no esforço, e uma nação cheia de energia e de esperança, a qual lhe devia quasi inteiramente a sua vida politica. A resistencia invencível que as forças de terra e de mar do imperio mussulmano tinham encontrado em Portugal provava-lhe que o povo educado por elle passara em curtos annos de debil infancia a juventude robusta. O edeficio da independencia nacional, desenhado pelo conde Henrique, cimentado por D. Theresa e realisado de todo o ponto por elle, achava-se, emfim, concluido com a segurança necessaria para resistir á destruidora acção dos séculos . . .

O ultimo anno da vida de Affonso I passou sem que a historia tivesse nada que mencionar acerca deste principe. O guerreiro como que já dormitava no somno da morte, que em breve devia cerrar-lhe perpetuamente as pálpebras. Apenas alguns documentos dessa época nos mostram que nos seus derradeiros dias não abandonou de todo o leme do estado, ao passo que se mostrava ainda liberal para a igreja, com quem sempre repartira largamente os fructos das suas conquistas. Veio, enfim, a fallecer a 6 de dezembro de 1185 depois de governar este pais com

os titulos d'infante e de principe doze annos e com o de rei quarenta e cinco. Ordenara elle que o enterrassem no mosteiro de Sancta Cruz de Coimbra, onde jaziam tambem as cinzas de sua esposa D. Mafalda. Ahi, de feito, descansou finalmente aquelle corpo gasto de tantas lidas em sepultura modesta, conforme permittia a rudeza dos tempos, até que elrei D. Manuel lhe alevantou o rico mausoléo em que ainda hoje se guardam os ossos do fundador da monarchia.»

XXXIX

Almeida Garrett (João Baptista da Silva Leitão, Visconde d' Almeida, 1799–1854) the most popular poet of Portugal published some twenty-seven volumes of poems, plays, history, etc.

The following extract is from a poem entitled “Camões,” canto V, stanza XI. The first edition of this poem appeared in 1825.

CINTRA

«Oh Cintra! oh saudosissimo retiro,
Onde se esquecem mágoas, onde folga
De se olvidar no seio á natureza
Pensamentos que imbalá adormecedo
O sussurro das folhas, c'o murmurio
Das despenhadas lymphas misturado!
Quem, descansando á fresca sombra tua,
Sonhou senão venturas? Quem, sentado
No musgo de tuas rocas escarpadas,
Espairecendo os olhos satisfeitos
Por céos, por mares, por montanhas, prados,

Por quanto ha hi¹ mais bello no universo,
Não sentiu arrobar-se-lhe a existencia,
Poisar-lhe o coração suavemente
Sobre esquecidas penas, amarguras,
Ancias, lavor da vida? — Oh grutas frias,
Oh gemedoras fontes, oh suspiros
De namoradas selvas, brandas veigas,
Verdes outeiros, gigantescas serras!
Não vos verei eu mais, delicias d'alma?
Troncos onde eu cortei queridos nomes
D'amisade e de amor, não hei de um dia
Perguntar-vos por elles? Soletando
Não irei pelas arvores crescidas
Os caracteres que, em tenrinhas plantas,
Pelas verdes cortiças lh'entalhára!
Oh! se inda² eu vos verei! . . .»

XL

Joaquim Nabuco (born in the province of Pernambuco, Brazil, in 1847; died at Washington January 17, 1910) was one of the ablest and best-known of Brazilian statesmen, diplomats, and writers.

The following extract from "*Minha Formação*," Paris, 1900, pages 223–225, is a good example of his writing, and at the same time throws light upon his character and upon his career as the leader of the antislavery movement in Brazil.

«Tornei a visitar doze annos depois a capellinha de S. Matheus onde minha madrinha, Dona Anna Rosa Falcão

¹ hi in place of *ahi*.

² inda for *ainda*.

de Carvalho, jaz na parede ao lado do altar, e pela pequena sacristia abandonada penetrei no cercado onde eram enterrados os escravos . . . Cruzes, que talvez não existam mais, sobre montes de pedras escondidas pelas ortigas, era tudo quasi que restava do opulenta *fabrica*, como se chamava o quadro da escravatura . . . Em baixo, na planicie, brilhavam como outr'ora as manchas verdes dos grandes cannaviaes, mas a usina agora fumegava e assobiava com um vapor agudo, annunciando uma vida nova. A almanjarra¹ desaparecera no passado. O trabalho livre tinha tomado o logar em grande parte do trabalho escravo. O engenho apresentava do lado do «porto» o aspecto de uma colonia; da casa velha não ficára vestigio . . . O sacrificio dos pobres negros que haviam incorporado as suas vidas ao futuro d'aquella propriedade, não existia mais talvez senão na minha lembrança . . . Debaixo dos meus pés estava tudo o que restava d'elles, defronte dos *columbaria* onde dormiam na estreita capella aquelles que elles haviam amado e livremente servido. Sosinho alli, invoquei todas as minhas reminiscencias, chamei-os a muitos pelos nomes, aspirei no ar carregado de aromas agrestes, que entretem a vegetação sobre suas covas, o sopro que lhes dilatava o coração e lhes inspirava a sua alegria perpetua. Foi assim que o problema moral da escravidão se desenhou pela primeira vez aos meus olhos em sua nitidez perfeita e com sua solução obrigatoria. Não só esses escravos não se tinham queixado de sua senhora, como a tinham até o fim abençoado . . . A gratidão estava do lado de quem dava. Elles morreram acreditando-se os deve-

¹ Almanjarra is the name given the old-fashioned cane mill that was turned by oxen or horses.

dores . . . seu carinho não teria deixado germinar a mais leve suspeita de que o senhor pudesse ter uma obrigação para com elles, que lhe pertenciam . . . Deus conservára alli o coração do escravo, como o do animal fiel, longe do contacto com tudo que o pudesse revoltar contra a sua dedicação. Esse perdão espontaneo da divida do senhor pelos escravos figurou-se-me a amnistia para os paizes que cresceram pela escravidão, o meio de escaparem a um dos peiores taliões da historia . . . Oh! os Santos pretos! seriam elles os intercessores pela nossa infeliz terra, que regaram com seu sangue, mas abençoaram com seu amor! Eram essas as idéas que me vinham entre aquelles tumulos, para mim, todos elles, sagrados, e então alli mesmo, aos vinte annos, formei a resolução de votar a minha vida, si assim me fosse dado, ao serviço da raça generosa entre todas que a desigualdade da sua condição enternecia em vez de azedar e que por sua doçura no soffrimento emprestava até mesmo á oppressão de que era victima um reflexo de bondade . . .»

XLI

Julia Lopes d'Almeida, native of the province of S. Paulo, Brazil, is the authoress of many romances and other writings. She has a charming straightforwardness and simplicity of style. She is the one writer who has had the artistic insight to appreciate, and the courage to set down in its true form, the language of the caipiras and of the old slaves. The following brief example taken from "A Familia Medeiros" 2a ed. S. Paulo 1894, 261-265, will give an idea of the character of the *patois* of the interior

of S. Paulo. The correct words inserted in brackets do not, of course, appear in the original.

«Eram seis horas da manhã quando Octavio, accor-
dando, ouviu dois caipiras dialogarem sob a janella do
seu quarto. Dizia um:

— Seu [Senhor] Romão já disse qui o mais fólte di nois
tudo [forte de nos todos] é o Braz . . .

— Tchê!¹ na terra! o mais fólte di nois tudo [forte de
nos todos] sou eu!

— Seu Zé [Senhor José] Riba mandou chamá [char-
mar] um capanga di [de] fora, um tá Fructuoso! [tal
Fructuoso]

— Eh! sae cinza!

— Os [o] coitado . . .

— Quê [probably for *quem é*] coitado?

— Da gente do dotô . . . [doutor]

— Foi nho [Senhor] Triguero que mandou chamá
[chamar] mecê [vossa mercê]?

— Não foi não; eu vim trazê [trazer] um recado de
nhô [Senhor] Juca, pro [para] móde [modo] elle í [ir] lá
combiná [combinar] as [a] coisa; o diabo é que fica talde
[tarde] e eu perciso [preciso] i mi [ir me] embora.

— Mecê [vossa mercê] foi convidado pra [para a]
festa?

— Fui.

— Quem fci que convidou mecê? [vossa mercê]

— Nhô [Senhor] Carro [Carlos] de Lima, mais [mas]
não vou não!

¹ Tchê, an exclamation; this sound is only used in Brazil in cer-
tain parts of S. Paulo, and in Minho and Tras-os-Montes in Portugal,
where it probably originated.

— Uê! Isso é o mesmo que pinchá [pinchar] dinheiro fóra!

— Ê . . . mais [mas] não vou. Eu quando vejo sangue fico tão patife [for covarde] que até chego a sê [ser] vil!

Ouvindo o nome de Fructuoso ligado áquellas palavras mysteriosas, Octavio ergueu-se e abriu a janella, mas já os dois caipiras se tinham afastado; um d'elles conversava com o Trigueirinhos, que o ouvia de rosto carregado; o outro desaparecia na porta do pateo com um feixe de palmitos ao hombro.

.

Estavam assim, quando ouviram o rodar de um trolly;¹ chegavam os Francos. Noemia estremeceu e aproximou-se instinctivamente da mãe, como a pedir-lhe misericordia e apoio.

Momentos depois, entravam na sala o coronel Cerqueira Franco e o filho.

O coronel era um velho robusto, alto, corpulento, de barba farta a encobrir-lhe todo o peito, andar pesado e grandes mãos cabelludas. O filho, igualmente alto e forte, tinha o aspecto agradável, o olhar sereno, um sorriso bondoso e feliz de creança posto nos grossos labios de um homem.

O commendador apresentou-o a Noemia, dizendo-lhe:

— Esta é que é vossa noiva!

Elle corou; ella, sem levantar os olhos, estendeu-lhe a mão, gelada e tremula.

Houve um instante de silencio, que o coronel Cerqueira

¹ Small spring wagon, or *buckboard*, introduced into S. Paulo about 1870; it is known by the English name of *trolly*.

Franco se apressou em cortar fallando num tom alto, com certa intimidade e alegria.

Voltando-se para o filho exclamou:

— Você tem uma noiva muito bonita; carece agora de tratá-la bem, ouviu? bonita e . . . commodá! porque é tão delicada que ha de ser por força muito leviana! [leve] cabe num canto do bolso de Julio!

Pouco depois, uma mucama chamou para o almoço.

Enchendo o seu prato de *quiréra* [milho pizado] e lombo de porco, o coronel Franco proseguia:

— D. Nicota, a senhora desculpe [desculpe] a franqueza! mas quando eu passei na cachoeira de Pirasununga, hontem de talde [tarde], tavam [estavam] caçando peixe [pescando], então apeguei de trazê [trazer] um dourado pra [para] sua ceia . . . » E dirigindo-se immediatamente ao Trigueirinhos:

— «Seu tio é bem bom . . . eu já pousei aqui na visinhança uma noite, em casa do . . . de um *chimbéva*¹ moreno. . . . »

— «O Prates?»

— «Isso! . . . não me alembrava [lembrava] o nome, era casado com uma moça da Limeira . . . oh! que mulher fogueta!»

Os outros riram-se; elle continuou:

— Estou ficando com os pés fria [frios]! acho que é porque a varanda é de tijolo! Trigueirinhos? vocês não aqueçam fogo, não?

— Que sim, responderam. De vez em quando, no inverno, faziam fogo na sala de jantar, entre as redes; agora porem, em fevereiro, nem se lembravam d'isso!

O coronel Franco proseguiu fallando sempre, ora das

¹ Flat-nosed person.

suas propriedades em diversos locaes da provincia, ora do casamento do filho, etc. . . . Á sobremesa disse ter ouvido de dois passageiros, no trem, grandes injurias ás auctoridades de Casa Branca, e tambem que haveria nessa cidade uma revolução de escarvos! isso é que era o diabo! Deveria dar credito a semelhante boato? indagava elle, mastigando com a completa dentadura postiça o doce de abobora moranga, servido ás talhadas.

XLII

Antonio Gonçalves Dias (1824–1864) was a native of the province of Maranhão in Brazil, and was educated at the University of Coimbra in Portugal. He is the most popular of the Brazilian poets. Every Brazilian knows by heart his beautiful “canção do exilo” written at Coimbra in 1843.

CANÇÃO DO EXILO

Minha terra tem palmeiras,
Onde canta o Sabiá;¹
As aves, que aqui gorjeião,
Não gorjeião como lá.

Nosso céu tem mais estrellas,
Nossas varzeas tem mais flores,
Nossos bosques tem mais vida,
Nossa vida mais amores.

Em scismar, sósinho, á noite,
Mais prazer encontro eu lá;
Minha terra tem palmeiras,
Onde canta o Sabiá.

¹ Sabiá is the popular name of a kind of Brazilian robin.

Minha terra tem primores,
Que taes não encontro eu cá;
Em scismar — sósinho, á noite —
Mais prazer encontro eu lá;
Minha terra tem palmeiras,
Onde canta o Sabiá.

Não permitta Deos que eu morra,
Sem que eu volte para lá;
Sem que desfrute os primores
Que não encontro por cá;
Sem qu'inda aviste as palmeiras,
Onde canta o Sabiá.

XLIII

The *Marquez de Maricá* (1773–1848) one of the illustrious statesmen and litterateurs of Brazil was especially noted for his maxims, examples of which are given here.

MAXIMAS, PENSAMENTOS, E REFLEXÕES

Ninguem considera a sua ventura superior ao seu merito, mas todos se queixão das injustiças dos homens e da fortuna.

A modestia doura os talentos, a vaidade os deslustra.

Os abusos, como os dentes, nunca se arrancão sem dôres.

Quando o povo não acredita na probidade, a immoralidade é geral.

O moço devasso pôde emendar-se, o velho vicioso he incorrigivel.

Os mais arrojados em fallar são ordinariamente os menos profundos em saber.

A virtude resistindo se reforça.

A virtude he communicavel, mas o vicio contagioso.

Os governos fracos fazem fortes os ambiciosos e insurgentes.

Ninguem duvida tanto como aquelle que mais sabe.

A bravura é taciturna, mas a cobardia garrulenta.

Ninguem é grande homem em tudo e em todo o tempo.

Não é dado ao saber humano conhecer toda a extensão da sua ignorancia.

Os medicos accusão a natureza, os enfermos aos medicos.

Muita sciencia occasiona muita incerteza.

Nenhum governo é bom para os homens máos.

Soffrei privações na mocidade, e sereis regalados na velhice.

Queixamo-nos da fortuna para desculpar a nossa preguiça.

O odio e a guerra que declaramos aos outros nos gasta e consome a nós mesmos.

Velhos ha que bem merecem ser comparados aos volções extinctos.

Os bons exemplos dos pais são as melhores lições e a melhor herança para os filhos.

A importunidade é algumas vezes mais feliz que o merecimento.

A liberdade é a que nos constitue entes moraes bons ou máos: é hum grande bem para quem tem juizo; e para quem o não tem, um mal gravissimo.

Não ha cousa mais facil que vencer os outros homens, nem mais difficil que vencer-nos a nós mesmos.

Entre as paixões humanas a ambição tem tanto de nobre como a avareza de ignobil.

Os nossos maiores inimigos existem dentro de nós mesmos: são os nossos erros, vícios e paixões.

Em algumas revoluções o jogo continúa como dantes, á excepção do barulho e jogadores que são novos.

As revoluções politicas, quando não melhorão, deteriorão, necessariamente a sorte das nações.

As nações, como as pessoas, aprendem errando e soffrendo.

Não ha escravidão peor que a dos vícios e paixões.

Huma revolução feliz justifica os maiores crimes e os eleva á cathegoria de virtudes.

Deve-se usar da liberdade, como de vinho, com moderação e sobriedade.

A plena liberdade é como a pedra philosophal, procurada por muitos e por nenhum descoberta.

Ninguém é tão prudente em dispendir o seu dinheiro como aquelle que melhor conhece as difficuldades de o ganhar honradamente.

A força sem intelligencia é como o movimento sem direcção.

Não se apaga o fogo com resinas, nem a colera com más palavras.

Os ignorantes exagerão sempre mais que os intelligentes.

Os prazeres, como as rosas, estão bordados de espinhos; colhêlos sem ferir-se é o requinte da prudencia e habilitade humana.

Os pobres declamão contra a riqueza para se consolarem ou se justificarem de não serem ricos.

A melhor entidade da terra é huma boa mulher, a peor a que é má.

A desconfiança é o tormento dos velhos, receião-se de todos e de tudo.

A morte salda muitas contas que a vida não pode ajustar.

A melhor companhia acha-se em huma escolhida livraria.

Huma boa letra não annuncia vasta intelligencia, nem huma eloquencia brilhante profunda sapiencia.

A ignorancia é mãe da superstição e fanatismo.

A gente moça não sabe apreciar os bens do que goza, nem avaliar os males que não padece.

Os que sabem menos são ordinariamente os que fallão mais.

Sem philosophia não ha sabedoria: quem não é philosopho não póde ser sabio.

Todos se accusão ou se queixão de pouco dinheiro, nenhum de pouco juizo.

A litteratura ingleza deve servir de antidoto á franchezza: esta vicia, aquella moralisa os seus cultores.

A vaidade é um elemento muito importante da felicidade humana.

MEU EPITAPHIO

Aqui jaz o corpo apenas
Do marquez de Maricá:
Quem quizer saber-lhe da alma,
Nos seus livros a achará.

XLIV

Luis de Camões (born at Lisbon in 1524, died in 1579) was the greatest literary genius ever produced by Portugal. His "*Lusiádas*" is the most celebrated poem in the Portuguese language. It is

an epic, and treats of the discovery of India by the early Portuguese navigators.

The extracts that follow are from the first Canto of the "Lusiádas." In verses VI to XVIII of the first Canto the poet addresses himself to Dom Sebastião who was king of Portugal from 1557 to 1578. At XIX the ships are under sail, and at XX Jupiter calls together the gods to decide the fate of the enterprise.

CANTO PRIMEIRO

VI

E vós, ó bem nascida segurança
Da Lusitana¹ antiga liberdade,
E não menos certissima esperança
De augmento da pequena Christandade:
Vós, ó novo temor da Maura lança,
Maravilha fatal² da nossa idade;
Dada ao mundo por Deos, que todo o mande,
Para do mundo a Deos dar parte grande:

VII

Vós, tenro e novo ramo florecente
De hum a arvore de Christo mais amada
Que nenhuma nascida no Occidente,
Cesárea, ou Christianissima chamada:
Vêde-o no vosso escudo, que presente
Vos amosta a victoria já passada;
Na qual vos deo por armas, e deixou
As que elle para si na Cruz tomou:

¹ Lusitania was an ancient province of Spain that included a large part of modern Portugal, of which it is often used as a synonym.

² fateful.

VIII

Vós, poderoso Rei, cujo alto imperio
O Sol logo em nascendo vê primeiro;
Vê-o também no meio do hemispherio;
E quando desce, o deixa derradeiro:
Vós, que esperâmos jugo, e vituperio
Do torpe Ismaelita cavalleiro,
Do Turco oriental, e do Gentio
Que inda¹ bebe o licor² do sancto³ rio.

IX

Inclinai por hum pouco a magestade,
Que nesse tenro gesto vos contemplo;
Que já se mostra qual na inteira idade,
Quando subindo ireis ao eterno templo.
Os olhos da Real benignidade
Ponde no chão: vereis hum novo exemplo
De amor dos patrios feitos valerosos,
Em versos divulgado numerosos.

XIX

Já no largo Oceano navegavam,
As inquietas ondas apartando;
Os ventos brandamente respiravam,
Das náos as velas concavas inchando:
Da branca escuma os mares se mostravam
Cobertos, onde as proas vão cortando
As maritimas aguas consagradas,
Que do gado de Proteo são cortadas.

¹ ainda.² liquor.³ santo.

XX

Quando os deoses¹ no Olympo luminoso,
Onde o governo está da humana gente,
Se ajuntam em concilio glorioso
Sobre as cousas futuras do Oriente:
Pisando o crystallino céu formoso,
Vem pela via Lactea juntamente,
Convocados da parte do Tonante²
Pelo neto gentil do velho Atlante.

¹ See deus.

² Jupiter Tonans.

VOCABULARIES

**including index to rules, tables, conjugations of verbs, and
examples in the text.**

The numbers and letters refer to the paragraphs of the text.

The gender of the nouns is indicated by the use of the definite article **o** (masculine) or **a** (feminine) before the noun. The article when thus used is not translated in the vocabulary.

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>adj.</i>	adjective	<i>pp.</i>	past participle
<i>adv.</i>	adverb	<i>pr. part.</i>	present participle
<i>art.</i>	article	<i>pl.</i>	plural
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction	<i>prep.</i>	preposition
<i>f.</i>	feminine	<i>pro.</i>	pronoun
<i>int.</i>	interjection	<i>s.</i>	substantive
<i>m.</i>	masculine	<i>v.</i>	verb
<i>ord.</i>	ordinal numeral		

The part of speech is indicated only in cases where doubt is possible.

PORTUGUESE-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a, *art.*, the, § 14-16.
a, *prep.*, to, of, § 122*a*, 123*a*, *b*,
c, *d*, *e*, 124, 139, 141.
a, that, § 87.
a, as, them, § 65.
abaixo, below, § 144.
abandonar, to abandon.
ABBREVIATIONS, § 147.
a abelha, bee, § 26*c*.
abençoar, to bless.
aberto, *adj.*, open.
a abobora, squash, pumpkin.
aborrido, sad, tedious, wearisome.
abraçar, to embrace.
abranger, to contain.
Abril, April.
abrir, to open.
ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE,
 § 44.
abundar, to abound.
o abuso, abuse.
acabar, to finish, § 123*f*.
a acção, action, share.
accender, to light, set fire.
ACCENT MARKS, § 8.
accessível, accessible.
accordar, to waken.
accusar, to accuse, complain.
aceitar, to accept.
acerca, concerning.
achar, to find, § 124*a*, 138.

acima, above, § 144.
acolá, there, § 135*r*.
acompanhar, to accompany,
 § 124*c*.
acontecer, to happen.
o acontecimento, occurrence.
acreditar, to believe.
a actividade, activity.
activo, active.
o actor, actor.
adiante, before (*in space*).
adiar, to postpone.
ADJECTIVES, § 39.
a admiração, admiration.
admirado, surprised.
adoecer, to fall ill, sicken.
adoptar, to adopt.
adormecido, lulled.
ADVERBS, § 134.
a adversidade, adversity.
o advogado, lawyer.
afastar, to withdraw, go away.
a affabilidade, affability.
afectuosamente, affectionately.
afectuoso, affectionate.
afeiçoado, addicted to, inclined.
afigurado, shapely, fine looking.
afim, for the purpose of, § 144-5.
a agonia, agony.
agora, now.
o agosto, August.
agradavel, agreeable.
agradecer, to thank, § 122*i*.

- agreste**, of the forest, untilled, rough.
a agua, water.
agudo, sharp, acute.
aguentar, to endure, stand.
a aguia, eagle, § 26c.
ahi, there, § 135c.
ainda, yet, § 135g, 145.
ajuntar, to get together, accumulate.
ajustar, to adjust.
a alegria, joy, joyfulness.
alem, beyond, § 144.
alevantar, to get up, lift, build.
o alfinete, pin.
algo, something, § 100b.
o algodão, cotton.
alguem, some one.
algum, some, any, no, § 101.
ali, there, § 135d.
o allemão, German (*and adj.*).
alli, *see ali*.
a alma, soul.
almoçar, to breakfast, § 122i.
o almoço, breakfast.
ALPHABET, § 1.
o altar, altar.
a alteza, highness, § 147.
alto, high, tall, § 45, 134e.
alugar, to let, rent.
o aluno, student.
alvo, white.
a ama, nurse.
a amabilidade, kindness, friendliness.
amanhan, *or amanhã*, to-morrow.
amar, to love.
amarello, yellow.
a amargura, bitterness, grief.
amavel, amiable, friendly.
a ambição, ambition.
ambicioso, ambitious.
ambos, both.
o amigo, friend.
a amizade, friendship.
a amnistia, amnesty.
o amor, love.
amostrar, to show (*also mostrar*).
a ancia, anxiety, perplexity.
andar, to walk, § 109e, 124a.
o andar, floor.
angelico, angelic.
o animal, animal.
o animo, mind, spirit.
o anel, ring, § 20. 5.
o anno, year.
annunciar, to announce.
anoitecer, to become night.
ante-hontem, day before yesterday.
ANTEPENULT, ACCENTED, § 9d.
antes, before (*in time*), rather, § 145.
o antidoto, antidote.
antigo, ancient, old.
o anzol, fish-hook.
aonde, where, § 135m.
apagar, to put out, extinguish.
apanhar, to catch.
apartar, to part, separate.
apegar, *see pegar*.
apenas, barely, merely.
apesar, in spite of, § 145.
o apoio, support.
apontar, to point, take aim.
após, after, behind.
o apostolo, apostle.

aparelhar, to prepare, fit out.
o appetite, appetite.
aprehender, to learn.
apreciar, to appreciate, enjoy.
apresentar, to present, introduce.
apressar, to hasten.
aproveitar, to improve the opportunity, turn to account.
aproximar, to approach.
aquelle -a, that, § 84.
aqueutar, to heat, fire.
aqui, here; **d'aqui**, hence, § 134, 135a.
aquillo, that, § 85.
o ar, air, appearance.
ardente, ardent.
a areia, sand.
a arma, (fire)arm.
armar, to arm.
a aroma, aroma, sweet odor.
arrancar, to pull out, extricate, § 108, 123f.
arrepender-se, to repent, § 126b.
arriscado, dangerous, risky.
arriscar, to risk.
arrobar, to ravish, put in ecstasy.
arrojado, bold, rash.
arrojar, to drag.
a arvore, tree.
ascender, to light.
o aspecto, aspect.
aspirar, to breathe.
assignalar, to distinguish.
assim, so, thus.
assistir, to assist, to be present.
assoberbar, to vex.
assobiar, to hiss, whistle.
o assucar, sugar.

o asylo, asylum, refuge, home.
o ataudé, coffin.
até, to, at, until, § 122c.
atirar, to throw, throw down, shoot.
atrever-se, to dare, venture.
o atrevimento, boldness, daring.
attento, attentive.
atingir, to attain.
atracar, to make fast.
AUGMENTATIVES, § 35, 46.
o augmento, increase.
o autor, author.
a autora, authoress.
a autoridade, authority.
AUXILIARY VERBS, § 109.
o auxilio, help.
avaliar, to value.
a avareza, avarice.
a ave, bird.
avistar, to see, get sight of.
a avó, grandmother.
o avô, grandfather.
-avo, suffix in fractions, § 61a.
a aza, wing.
azedar, to embitter.
o azeite, oil.
azul, blue, § 41f.

B

o bacalháu, codfish.
o bacharel, bachelor (*academic*).
a bahia, bay.
a bainha, sheath, scabbard.
baixo, low, § 134e.
a bala, ball, bullet.
balançar, to balance, swing, rock.
a bandeira, flag, banner

a banha, lard.
 o banho, bath.
 o barão, baron.
 barato, cheap.
 a barba, beard.
 barbaro, barbarous.
 a baroneza, baroness.
 a barra, bar, mouth of stream.
 o barril, barrel, § 20. 6.
 o barro, clay.
 o barulho, noise.
 bastante, enough.
 bastar, to suffice.
 a batalha, battle.
 a batata, potato.
 bater, to beat, knock.
 beber, to drink.
 o beijo, lip.
 bello, fine, handsome.
 o Beltrano, § 94.
 bem, well; se bem que, § 145.
 o bem, good; *pl.*, bens, goods;
 bens de raiz, real estate.
 bemdito, *see* bemdizer.
 a benção, blessing.
 a benignidade, benignity.
 o betume, pitch, tar.
 a bibliotheca, library.
 o bilhete, ticket.
 o bispo, bishop.
 • boa, *see* bom.
 o boato, report, rumor.
 a boca, mouth.
 o boi, ox.
 bulir, *see* bulir.
 o bolso, pocket.
 bom, good, § 41g, 51.
 a bondade, goodness, kindness.
 bondoso, good, good-natured.

bonito, pretty, handsome.
 bordar, to border, surround.
 o bosque, woods, grove.
 botar, to put, place.
 a botica, apothecary's shop.
 a botina, boot.
 o braço, arm.
 branco, white.
 brandamente, gently.
 brando, gentle, sweet.
 o brasileiro, Brazilian (*and adj.*).
 bravo, wild.
 a bravura, bravery.
 o breu, pitch, tar.
 breve, short.
 brilhante, brilliant.
 brilhar, to shine, glitter.
 o brilho, brilliancy.
 brincar, to play, fool.
 bulir, to disturb, stir.
 buscar, to fetch, bring.

C

cá, here, § 135b.
 a cabeça, head; round-topped
 mountain.
 o cabelo, hair.
 cabelludo, hairy.
 caber, to hold, § 112, p. 83.
 a cabra, goat.
 a cachoeira, water-fall.
 o cachorro, dog.
 cada, each, § 100j.
 o cadaver, dead body.
 a cadeira, chair.
 o caes, quay, mole, § 20b.
 o café, coffee.
 cahir, to fall, § 110, p. 82.
 o caipira, backwoodsman.

- a caixa**, box; **caixa economica**, savings-bank.
o caixão, big box. *See* Exercise X.
a cal, lime, § 20. 4.
calar, to hush, silence, § 126b.
calçar, to put on (*shoes, socks, trousers*), § 122.
as calças (*pl.*), trousers, § 21.
o calor, heat, § 121.
a camada, bed, layer (*of rock*).
a camara, room.
o, a camarada, companion.
o camareiro, chamberlain.
o camarote, cabin (*on ship*), box (*in theater*).
o caminho, road, way.
a camisa, shirt.
o campo, field, plain.
cançar, to tire, weary.
o cannavial, cane field.
cansado, *see* cançar.
cantar, to sing.
o canto, corner; song.
o cantor, singer.
a cantora, songstress.
o cão, dog.
o capanga, hired assassin.
capaz, capable, § 139a.
a capela, chapel.
CAPITAL LETTERS, § 12.
o capital, principal; *f.*, capital (*city*), § 31.
o capitalista, capitalist.
o capitão, captain.
caprichoso, erratic, whimsical.
o caracter, character, handwriting.
o cardeal, cardinal.
carecer, to need, require.
a caridade, charity.
o carinho, kindness, affection.
a carne, meat, flesh.
caro, dear, expensive.
carregado, heavy, loaded.
o carro, cart, wagon, carriage.
a carta, letter.
a casa, house.
a casaca, (long) coat.
o casamento, marriage.
casar, to marry.
o caso, case.
a categoria, list, category.
a cathedral, cathedral.
caudal, mighty.
a causa, cause, reason, case (*law*).
o cavalheiro, knight, nobleman; *adj.*, noble, gentleman-like.
o cavalleiro, horseman, cavalier, gentleman.
a cavallo, horse.
caxoeira, *see* cachoeira.
cear, to sup.
cedo, early.
cego, blind, § 139a.
a ceia, supper.
celebre, celebrated, § 143.
celestial, heavenly.
cem, one hundred.
o cemiterio, cemetery.
os centenares, hundreds.
o centesimo, hundredth.
cento, hundred, p. 50.
o ceo, heaven.
cerca, about, § 144.
o cercado, enclosure.

cercar, to encircle, surround, enclose, § 124c, 143.

cerrar, to close.

a certeza, certainty.

certo, sure, certain, § 51, 100f.

cerúleo, cerulean, bluish, azure.

cessar, to cease, § 122e, 123f.

o chá, tea.

a chaleira, tea-kettle.

chamar, to call.

chão, *adj.*, plain.

o chão, ground.

o chapeo, hat.

o charco, mud, puddle.

a chave, key.

o chefe, chief.

chegar, to arrive, suffice, § 122c.

cheio, full.

o chicote, (riding) whip.

a chinela, slipper.

chorar, to weep, cry.

chover, to rain.

christão, Christian.

a chuva, rain.

a cidadão, citizen.

a cidade, city.

cimentar, to cement.

cinco, five, § 55.

cincoenta, fifty.

a cinza, ashes.

a cithara, cithern, lute.

o ciúme, jealousy.

civil, civil.

a civilização, civilization.

civilizado, civilized.

claro, clear.

classificar, to classify.

o clima, climate.

a cobardia, cowardice.

coberto, covered.

cobiçar, *see* **cubigar**.

a cobra, snake, § 26c.

cobrir, to cover, § 124c.

o coco, coconut.

a coisa, *see* **cousa**.

coitado, poor (fellow) (*term of endearment or pity*), § 146.

a colera, wrath.

a colher, spoon; *v.*, to collect, gather.

o collarinho, collar.

a collecção, collection.

o collega, colleague.

a colonia, colony.

com, with, § 122d, 142.

combinar, to combine, arrange.

começar, to begin, § 123e, *f*.

comer, to eat.

comigo, *see* **commigo**.

o commendador, commander.

commigo, with me, § 65c.

commodo, convenient, handy.

COMMON TERMINATIONS

of m. and f. nouns, § 27.

commun, common.

communicavel, communicable.

comnosco, with us, § 65c.

como, *adv.*, how, as, § 131.

a compaixão, compassion.

a companhia, company.

a comparação, comparison.

comparar, to compare.

COMPARISONS, § 42-45.

completamente, completely.

completo, complete, whole.

COMPOUND PLURALS, § 22.

comprar, to buy.

comprido, long.

consigo, with himself, by himself, etc., § 67.

contigo, with thee, § 65c.

concavo, concave.

conceder, to concede, grant.

o concilio, council.

o conde, count.

a condição, condition.

CONDITIONAL ENDINGS AND MEANINGS, § 106, 107.

a confiança, confidence.

conforme, according as.

confranger-se, to shrink.

conhecer, to know, be acquainted with, § 143.

CONJUNCTIONS, § 145.

a conquista, conquest.

consagrado, consecrated.

o conselheiro, counselor.

o conselho, council, advice.

a consequencia, consequence.

conservar, to preserve.

considerar, to consider.

consolar, to console, comfort.

consumir, *see* **consumir**.

CONSONANTS, § 5.

constituir, to constitute.

o consul, consul, § 20. 4.

consumir, to consume.

a conta, account, count, reckoning.

o contacto, contact.

contagioso, contagious.

contar, to count.

contemplar, to contemplate, *see*.

o contentamento, contentment.

contente, content, pleased.

continuar, to continue, go on.

o conto, conto, § 55; a tale.

contra, against.

o contrario, contrary.

convem, *see* **convir**, § 113.

converter, to converse.

converter, to convert.

convidar, to invite.

convir, to be convenient, suit, § 113.

o convite, invitation.

convocar, to call together.

o copo, cup, glass.

a côr, color.

o coração, heart.

a coragem, courage.

corar, to color, blush.

o coronel, colonel.

o corpo, body.

corpulento, stout.

correcto, correct.

corrente, *adj.*, current.

corrigir, to correct.

a corrupção, corruption.

cortar, to cut.

a côrte, court, § 23.

a cortiça, bark.

o corvo, crow, § 26c.

a costa, side, coast.

costumar, to accustom, be accustomed.

a costume, custom.

a cousa, thing, § 44c.

a cova, grave.

o covarde, coward.

o cravo, pink, horseshoe-nail.

o credito, credit.

crente, faithful, believing.

o crepusculo, twilight.

crer, to believe, § 112, p. 83.

crescer, to grow.
 crescido, grown up.
 a criação, raising, breeding (*of cattle*), creation.
 a criada, (female) servant.
 o criado, (male) servant.
 a criança, baby.
 o crime, crime.
 crível, credible.
 cru, crua, raw, § 41e.
 a cruz, cross.
 a cruzada, crusade.
 o cruzado, crusader.
 cristallino, crystalline.
 a cubiça, greed, lust.
 cubiçar, long for.
 cubiçoso, covetous.
 o cuidado, care.
 cuidadosamente, carefully.
 cujo, whose, § 96, 99.
 o cultor, cultivator, lover, follower.
 o cura, curate; *sf.*, cure.
 curto, short.
 custar, to cost.
 customar, *see* costumar.

D

da, § 15b.
 o dado, data, information.
 o damno, damage.
 dantes, before.
 dar, to give, § 111; dar a luz (*um livro*), to publish.
 datar, to date.
 de, of, § 122e, f, 124d, 139a, b, c, d, f.
 débil, weak, feeble.
 decidir, to decide.

o decimo, tenth, § 59.
 declamar, to declaim, cry out.
 declarar, to declare.
 o dedal, thimble.
 a dedicação, dedication.
 dedicar, to dedicate.
 DEFECTIVE VERBS, p. 91.
 defender, to defend.
 deferir, to grant, concede.
 DEFINITE ARTICLE, § 14-16.
 defronte, in front of.
 deitar, to lie down, § 123e, h.
 deixar, to leave, let, allow, § 123f.
 o deleite, delight, pleasure.
 delicado, delicate.
 a delicia, delight, bliss.
 demais, too much.
 demandar, to demand, head for.
 a demissão, dismissal, relief.
 denso, dense.
 a dentadura, set of teeth.
 o dente, tooth.
 o dentista, dentist.
 dentro, within, § 144.
 dependente, dependent, § 139a.
 depois, after, afterwards, § 144, 145.
 depôr, to deposit; lay down; depose.
 depressa, quickly.
 a depressão, depression.
 o deputado, deputy, congressman.
 derradeiro, *adj.*, last.
 desapontado, put out.
 desaparecer, to disappear.

desastrado, disastrous.
descançar, to rest.
descer, to descend, set, go down.
descobrir, to discover.
a desconfiança, doubt, distrust.
desconhecido, unknown.
desculpar, to excuse, pardon.
desde, since.
desdenhoso, disdainful.
a desigualdade, inequality.
desejar, to desire, wish.
o desejo, desire.
desejoso, desirous.
desenfreado, unbridled, disorderly.
desenhar, to design, draw.
o desenho, design, plan.
desfigurar, to disfigure.
desfrutar, to enjoy.
deslustrar, to tarnish, dull.
desnecessario, unnecessary.
desordenado, disorderly.
despedir, to dismiss.
despedir-se, to take leave.
despenhar, to fall.
destruidor, destructive.
destruir, to destroy.
deteriorar, to deteriorate.
detraz, backward, § 144.
o deus, god, § 20b.
devagar, slow, slowly.
devasso, licentious, dissolute.
o devedor, debtor.
o dever, duty.
dever, to owe, ought, p. 72.
devidamente, duly.
devorar, to devour.
dez, ten.
o dezembro, December.

dezenove, nineteen.
dezesete, seventeen.
dezoito, eighteen.
o dia, day.
o diabo, devil.
DIALECTICAL, § 6.
dialogar, to converse.
o diamante, diamond.
diante, before, § 144.
diario, daily.
a diffamação, calumny.
difficil, difficult.
a difficuldade, difficulty.
digno, worthy, § 139a.
dilatar, to dilate, swell.
diligente, diligent.
DIMINUTIVES, § 36-38, 46.
o dinheiro, money.
DIPHTHONGS, § 3.
a direcção, direction.
directamente, directly.
o director, director.
direito, right, straight.
dirigir, to direct.
dispende, to spend.
disposto, disposed.
disseminar, to scatter.
distante, distant, § 139a.
distincto, distinct, distinguished, § 143.
distinguir, to distinguish.
dito, *pp. of dizer*, said, same.
diverso, different.
a divida, debt.
dividir, to divide.
divulgar, to divulge, publish.
dizer, to say, § 112, p. 83, 126c.
do, of the, § 15b.

dobrado, } double, § 62*b*.
dobro, }

o doce, sweetmeat; *adj.*, sweet.

docil, docile, § 20. 6.

o documento, document.

a doçura, gentleness, sweetness.

a doença, sickness.

doente, sick, § 139*a*.

dois, two.

domestico, domestic, homely.

o domingo, Sunday.

donde, whence, § 135*m*.

o dono, owner, proprietor.

a dor, pain.

dormir, to sleep, § 108*g*.

dormitar, to sleep, slumber.

o dote, dower, dowry, § 23.

DOUBLE NEGATIVE, § 100*e*, 137.

o dourado, a kind of fish; *pp. of* dourar.

dourar, to embellish, ornament with gold.

o doutor, doctor.

doze, twelve.

as duas, two, § 55.

o duplo, double, § 62*b*.

durar, to last.

a duvida, doubt.

duvidar, to doubt.

duzentos, two hundred.

a dynastia, dynasty.

E

e, and, § 145 note.

é, is (*see ser*, p. 79).

economico, economic.

o edeficio, edifice, building.

a edição, edition.

a educação, education.

educado, educated.

o effeito, effect; **com effeito**, in deed, § 134*a*.

egual, *see igual*.

igualmente, *see igualmente*.

eis, *adv.*, behold, § 134*g*.

eleger, to elect.

o elemento, element.

elevant, to elevate, raise, lift.

ella, she, it, § 65, 65*d*.

elle, he, it, § 65, 65*d*.

ELLIPTICAL EXPRESSIONS, § 124*c*, 146.

a eloquencia, eloquence.

eloquente, eloquent.

em, in, § 122*g*, 131*a*, 140.

embalar, to rock.

embarcar, to embark.

embora, away.

emendar, to mend, reform.

emfim, finally.

emmagrecer, to grow thin.

empallidecer, to turn pale.

empecer, to hinder.

o emprego, employment.

emprehendedor, enterprising.

emprestar, to lend, loan.

encantador, charming, § 41*e*.

encher, to fill.

ENCLITICS, § 72*c*, *e*.

encobrir, to cover.

encontrar, to meet, find.

a energia, energy.

enfermo, ill, sick, infirm.

enfraquecer, to grow weak.

o engenheiro, engineer.

o engenho, engine, mill; estate with a cane mill.

engrandecer, to grow large, enlarge.

engulir, to swallow.

enjoado, seasick, nauseated.

ensinar, to instruct, teach, § 123*d*.

entalhar, to engrave.

o ente, being.

entender, to understand.

enternecer, to move to compassion, melt.

enterrar, to inter, bury.

a entidade, being.

a entrada, entrance.

entrar, to enter.

entregar, to deliver.

entretanto, whilst.

entreter, to entertain, support.

entupido, obstructed.

enviar, to send.

envolver, to wrap up.

o enxó, adz.

enxugar, to dry.

o enxurro, torrent.

a época, epoch.

a epocha, *see* *epoca*.

equivocar-se, to mistake, to be mistaken.

o eremita, hermit.

erguer, to raise, arise, get up.

errar, to err, go wrong.

o erro, error, mistake.

a escala, scale.

escapar, to escape.

escarpado, steep.

a escola, school.

escolher, to select, choose.

esconder, to hide.

a escravidão, slavery.

o escravo, slave.

escrever, to write, § 116.

escripto, *see* *escrever*.

o escrivão, notary.

o escudo, shield.

a escuma, foam.

escuramente, darkly.

as escuras (*pl.*), darkness; in the dark.

escurecer, to darken, grow dark.

escuro, dark.

ESDRUXULOS, § 9*e*.

o esforço, force, courage, effort.

a esmola, charity.

o espaço, space, room.

a espada, sword.

espairecer, to amuse one's self.

o espanto, alarm.

especial, special.

especialmente, especially.

o espectáculo, show, performance.

a esperança, hope.

esperar, to hope, wait.

a espingarda, gun.

o espinho, thorn.

espontaneo, spontaneous.

a esposa, wife.

esquecer, to forget, § 122*e*.

esquerdo -*a*, left.

esse -*a*, this, § 84, 89.

o estado, state, condition.

a estancia, estate.

estaque, stagnant.

estar, to be, § 109*j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, 110, 126*b*.

este -*a*, this, § 84, 86, 90.

estender, to extend.

esterlina, sterling.

a estima, esteem.
a estrada, road; **estrada de ferro**, railway.
estranho, strange, foreign; *sm.*, stranger, outsider.
estreito, narrow, close.
a estrela, star.
estremecer, to tremble.
o estudante, student.
estudar, to study.
a eternidade, eternity.
eterno, eternal.
eu, I, § 65, 66c.
a Europa, Europe.
o evangelho, gospel.
exacto, exact, true.
exceder, to exceed.
a excellencia, excellency, § 66.
excellente, excellent.
a excepção, exception.
excepto, except.
exclamar, to exclaim.
o exemplo, example.
o exercito, army.
o exicio, ruin, destruction.
a existencia, existence.
existir, to exist.
extender, *see* **estender**.
a extensão, extent.
extenso, vast, extensive.
extincto, extinct.
estranho, *see* **estranho**.

F

a fabrica, factory.
o fabrico, manufacture.
fabuloso, fabulous.
a faca, knife.
a facada, knife cut.

a façanha, feat, exploit.
a face, face, cheek.
facil, easy, § 139a.
faço, *see* **fazer**, § 112.
a faina, handling, rigging.
falar, to speak, talk, § 107, p. 72.
fallecer, to die, perish.
faltar, to lack, be lacking.
a fama, fame, renown, report.
a familia, family.
famoso, famous, § 143.
o fanatismo, fanaticism.
fantastico, fantastic.
farto, full.
fatal, fateful.
o favor, favor, kindness.
a fazenda, estate, treasury.
o fazendeiro, planter.
fazer, to do, make, § 112, p. 83, § 124c.
a fé, faith.
a febre, fever.
fechar, to close, shut.
o feijão, bean.
feio, ugly.
o feito, deed.
o feixe, bundle, sheaf.
a felicidade, happiness, good fortune.
feliz, happy, fortunate.
femea, female, § 26c.
FEMININE ADJECTIVES, § 41.
FEMININE NOUNS, § 26.
ferir, to wound.
fero, savage, ferocious.
a ferocidade, ferocity.
feroz, ferocious.

o ferro, iron, § 23.
 a ferrugem, rust.
 fertil, fertile.
 fervoroso, fervent, zealous.
 a festa, festival, feast; dia de festa, holiday, saint's day.
 o fevereiro, February.
 fez, *see* fazer, § 112.
 as fezes, dregs.
 ficar, to remain, become, be, § 125d.
 fiel, faithful.
 a figura, figure.
 o figurão, § 35.
 figurar, to figure, show.
 a filha, daughter.
 o filho, son, § 23.
 o fim, end.
 FINAL SYLLABLE ACCENT, § 9b.
 finalmente, finally.
 fincar, to drive in.
 fingir, to pretend.
 fino, fine.
 FIRST CONJUGATION, § 106, 107.
 fixo, fixed.
 fiz, *see* fazer, § 112.
 flammejar, to blaze.
 a flor, flower.
 florecer, to bloom, flower, blossom.
 o fogo, fire.
 o foguete, sky-rocket.
 foi, *see* ir, § 113; *see* ser, § 109o, p. 79.
 folgar, to rest, repose, enjoy, rejoice.
 a folha, leaf.

ofome, hunger; com fome, hungry.
 a fonte, fountain, spring.
 fóra, *prep.*, outside, away.
 a força, force.
 formar, to form, shape.
 a formiga, ant, § 26c.
 forrar, to line, § 124c.
 forte, strong.
 a fortuna, fortune.
 o fosforo, match.
 fosse, *see* ser, p. 80.
 o fossil, fossil, § 20. 6.
 fraco, weak.
 FRACTIONS, § 61.
 francez, French.
 a franqueza, frankness.
 fraquinho, quite weak.
 a frase, phrase.
 a frente, front, § 144.
 frequente, frequent.
 fresco, fresh.
 frigir, to fry, § 113, p. 86.
 frio, cold.
 frito, *see* frigir, p. 86.
 a fructa, *see* fruta.
 a fruta, fruit, § 29.
 o fruto, fruit, § 29.
 Fuão, § 94.
 fugir, to flee.
 fui, *see* ser, p. 79.
 fui, *see* ir, p. 87.
 o Fulano, § 94.
 fumegar, to smoke.
 o fumo, smoke, tobacco.
 o fundador, founder.
 fundar, to found, establish.
 funebre, funereal.
 o funfl, funnel, § 20. 6.
 o futuro, future (*and adj.*).

G

o gado, cattle.
a gallinha, hen.
o gallinheiro, chicken house.
o gallo, cock.
ganhar, to gain, earn.
o garfo, (table) fork.
a garrafa, bottle.
garrulento, garrulous, talkative.
gastar, to spend, waste.
o gato, cat.
gelado, frozen, cold.
o gelo, ice.
gemedor, sighing, moaning.
GENDER OF NOUNS, § 24.
o general, general.
generoso, generous.
o genro, son-in-law.
a gente, folks, people.
gentil, gentle, nice, kind.
o gentio, Gentile, pagan.
geographico, geographical.
a geologia, geology.
geral, general.
germinar, to germinate, sprout.
GERUND, § 107, p. 75 note.
o gesto, gesture, movement.
gigantesco, gigantic.
a gloria, glory.
glorioso, glorious.
gordo, fat, stout.
gorgeiar, to warble.
gostar, to like, § 122e.
a gota, drop.
o governador, governor.
governar, to govern.
o governo, government.
gozar, to enjoy.

a grammatica, grammar.
grande, great, large, § 44b, 51.
a gratidão, gratitude.
o grau, degree.
grave, grave, serious.
grego, Greek.
grosseiro, rough, coarse.
grosso, thick, coarse, big.
a gruta, grotto.
o guarda, warder; *sf.*, care.
o guarda-chuva, umbrella.
o guarda-sol, sunshade.
a guerra, war.
o guerreiro, warrior.

H

ha, *see* **haver**, p. 79, § 109h.
habil, skilful, able.
a habilidade, ability, skill.
habitar, to inhabit, § 140.
haver, to be, to have, § 109a, c,
h, *o*, p. 79.
he, *see* **é**, § 13a.
o hebreu, Hebrew (*and adj.*).
hediondo, hideous, horrid.
o hemispherio, hemisphere.
a herança, inheritance.
o heroe, hero.
o hespanhol, Spaniard; *adj.*,
 Spanish, § 41d.
a historia, history, story.
historico, historical.
hoje, to-day; **hoje em dia**, now-
 adays.
o holocausto, holocaust.
o hombro, shoulder.
o homem, man.
a homenagem, homage.
a honra, honor, § 23.

honradamente, honorably.
honrar, to honor.
hontem, yesterday.
a hora, hour; **são tres horas**, it is three o'clock, § 64.
houve, *see* **haver**, p. 79.
humano, human.
humilde, humble.
o hypocrita, hypocrite.
a hypothese, hypothesis.

I

la, *see* **ir**, p. 87.
a idade, age.
a idéa, idea.
o idioma, idiom, language.
ignobil, ignoble.
o ignorante, ignorant (*and adj.*).
ignorar, to be ignorant of.
a igreja, church.
igual, equal.
igualmente, equally.
illicito, illicit, unlawful.
illustre, illustrious, § 143.
imaginar, to imagine, think, realize.
o iman, lodestone.
imbar, *see* **embalar**, to rock.
immaculado, immaculate.
imediatamente, immediately.
a immensidade, immensity.
immenso, immense.
a immoralidade, immortality.
impedir, to impede, hinder, p. 87.
IMPERATIVE, § 127, p. 100.
imperceptível, imperceptible.
o imperio, empire.
IMPERSONAL VERBS, § 121.

importante, important.
importar, to matter, amount to.
a importância, importance.
impresso, *see* **imprimir**, § 117.
imprimir, to print.
a inanição, absence, emptiness.
a incerteza, uncertainty.
inchar, to swell.
inclinado, inclined, bowed down.
inclinár, to incline.
incomodado, put out, incommoded, uneasy.
incorporar, to incorporate.
incorrigível, incorrigible.
indagar, to inquire, search.
INDECLINABLES, § 134.
INDEFINITE ARTICLE, § 17.
a independência, independence.
independente, independent.
o index, index, § 20. 2.
INDICATIVE, § 128.
o indio, Indian.
indisposto, ill.
o individuo, person, individual.
indomito, ungovernable, indomitable.
a industria, industry.
inexgotável, inexhaustible.
a infamação, slander.
a infancia, infancy.
o infante, infant.
infelz, unfortunate.
inferior, inferior, § 44g, 45.
a influencia, influence.
a informação, information.
Inglaterra, England.
inglez, English, § 28a.
a iniciativa, initiative.

o inimigo, enemy.
a injúria, abuse.
a injustiça, injustice.
injusto, unjust.
innumeravel, countless.
inquieta, unstable, unquiet.
inspirar, to inspire.
o instante, instant.
instintivamente, instinctively.
o instituto, institute.
a instrução, instruction.
instrutivo, instructive.
insurgente, uprising, insurgent, rebellious.
inteiramente, entirely, quite.
inteiro, entire, whole.
a intelligencia, intelligence.
intelligente, intelligent.
o intercessor, intercessor.
interior, interior, § 44*g*; *sm.*, interior.
INTERJECTIONS, § 146.
INTERROGATION, § 138.
a intimidade, intimacy.
a invasão, invasion.
invencível, invincible.
o inverno, winter.
invicto, invincible, unconquerable.
invocar, to invoke, call upon.
ir, to go, § 109*f, g*, 113, 122*h*, 125*d*.
irlandez, *adj.*, *sm.*, Irish, Irishman.
a irmã, or **irman**, sister.
o irmão, brother.
IRREGULAR COMPARISONS, § 45.
IRREGULAR VERBS, § 110, 112, 113, pp. 81-88.

ismaelita, Ismaelite.
isso, this, § 85.
isto, this, § 85.
a Italia, Italy.

J

já, already, now.
jamaiz, never, § 136.
o janeiro, January.
a janella, window.
o jantar, dinner.
jantar, to dine.
jazer, to lie (*in the grave*), § 112.
o jazigo, grave.
jejuar, to fast.
João, John.
o jogador, player.
jogar, to play, game.
o jogo, game.
o joguete, jest, plaything.
o jornal, journal.
o jovem, youth.
o jugo, yoke, servitude.
o juiz, judge.
o juizo, judgment.
julgar, to judge.
juncto, *see* **junto**.
o junho, June.
juntamente, jointly, together.
junto, near, close by.
o juro, interest (*commercial*).
justamente, justly.
justificar, to justify.
justo, just.
a juventude, youth (*age of*).

K

o kilo, kilogram.

L

la, her, it, § 65, 65b.
 lá, there, § 135r.
 o labio, lip.
 o laço, bond.
 lacteo, milky.
 o lado, side.
 o ladrão, thief, robber.
 ladrar, to bark.
 a lagoa, lake.
 a lança, lance, spear.
 lançar, to throw.
 o lapis, pencil.
 o lar, fireside, home.
 largamente, liberally.
 largo, wide, broad.
 a lata, tin can.
 a lavagem, washing.
 lavar, to wash.
 o labor, labor, work, task.
 lê, *see* ler, p. 84.
 o leão, lion.
 a legua, league.
 a lei, law.
 o leite, milk.
 o leito, bed.
 a lembrança, remembrance.
 lembrar, to remember, § 122e.
 o leme, rudder.
 a lenha, fire-wood.
 a lente, lens; o lente, lecturer.
 lento, slow.
 ler, to read, § 112, p. 84.
 a letra, letter, § 23; handwriting.
 LETTERS, PRONUNCIATION OF, § 1.
 levantar, to lift, get up.
 levar, to carry.

leve, *adj.*, light.
 lhe, to him, her, it, § 65a, 70.
 li, *see* ler, p. 84.
 liberal, liberal.
 a liberdade, liberty, § 23.
 a libra, pound.
 a lição, lesson.
 licito, licit, lawful.
 o licor, liquor, drink, liquid.
 a lida, fatigue, toil.
 ligar, to unite, join.
 o limão, lemon.
 limitar, to limit.
 a limonada, lemonade.
 limpar, to clean, cleanse.
 limpo, clean.
 a língua, tongue, language.
 a literatura, literature.
 livrar, to deliver, free.
 a livraria, library.
 livre, *adj.*, free.
 livremente, freely.
 o livro, book.
 lo, § 15, 65b.
 o lobo, wolf.
 a locação, location.
 logo, presently, at once, just now, § 134, note.
 a loja, shop.
 o lombo, loin, roast.
 longe, far; de longe, afar, § 131a.
 longo, long.
 a loteria, lottery.
 a lousa, gravestone.
 louvar, to praise.
 o lugar, place, room.
 o lume, light.
 luminoso, luminous.
 os lusiadas, Lusiads, *see* p. 173.

a luz, light; dar á luz, to publish.

a lympa, water (*poetic*).

lyrico, lyric.

M

ma, *see* mau.

a machina, machine.

macho, male, § 26c.

a madrinha, godmother.

a madrugada, dawn.

a magua, *or* magoa, grief.

o mahommetano, Mohammedan.

a mãe, *or* mãe, mother.

maior, greater, § 44g, 45.

mais, more, § 42, 44b.

a majestade, majesty, p. 116.

o mal, evil, § 20. 4.

a mala, mail, traveling-bag.

malcriado, ill-bred.

a mancha, spot, splotch.

mandar, to order, § 124b.

a mandioca, a kind of plant.

a maneira, manner, way, § 145.

a manha, habit; *pl.*, manners.

a manhã, *or* manhan, morning.

manso, tame, gentle.

a manteiga, butter.

a mão, hand.

o mappa, map.

o mar, sea.

a maravilha, marvel.

marcar, to mark.

o março, March.

a maré, tide.

o marfim, ivory.

o maribondo, wasp.

o marido, husband.

maritimo, belonging to the sea.

o marmelo, quince.

o martello, hammer.

o martyr, martyr.

mas, but.

mascar, to chew.

MASCULINE NOUNS, § 25.

a massa, mass, dough.

mastigar, to chew.

a mata, forest, weeds, jungle.

matar, to kill.

a materia, matter, material.

o mato, forest.

mau, bad, § 41g.

o mauro, *or* mouro, moor; *adj.*, moorish.

o mausoléu, mausoleum.

me, me, § 65, 67.

o medico, physician.

medir, to measure, § 113, p. 87.

a meia, stocking.

o meiado, middle.

o meio, middle, means; half, § 61.

o mel, honey, § 20. 5.

melhor, better, § 45.

melhorar, to improve.

a memoria, memory, memoir.

mencionar, to mention.

a menina, girl.

o menino, boy.

menor, smaller, § 45.

menos, less, § 45.

mente, § 134c, d.

a mentira, lie, falsehood.

mentiroso, lying.

a mercê, mercy, § 66.

merecer, to merit.

o merecimento, merit.

o merito, merit, desert.

a mesa, table.

mesmo, same, § 39*b*, 44*c*, 92, 93,
135*j*.

MESOCITICS, § 72*b*.

o mestre, master, teacher.

a metade, half.

o metro, meter.

metter, to put, place.

meu, minha, etc., *pro.*, § 76.

o mez, month.

a mica, mica.

mil, one thousand.

o milésimo, thousandth.

milhão, million.

os milhares, thousands.

o milho, (Indian) corn.

o milreis, milreis.

mim, me, § 65, 67.

a mina, mine.

o mineiro, miner.

minimo, smallest, least, § 45.

o ministro, minister.

o minuto, minute.

a miseria, want.

a misericórdia, pity.

misturar, to mix, mingle.

a moça, young woman.

a mocidade, youth.

o moço, young man.

a moda, fashion.

MODEL VERBS, § 107.

a moderação, moderation.

modernamente, lately.

a modestia, modesty.

modesto, modest.

o modo, manner.

a molestia, sickness.

molhado, wet, § 23.

o momento, moment.

a monarchia, monarchy.

a montanha, mountain.

o monte, hill, heap.

a morada, dwelling-place.

moral, moral.

moralisar, to moralize, improve.

o morango, strawberry.

moreno, dark brown.

morrer, to die, § 122*e*.

o morro, hill.

mortal, mortal.

a morte, death.

o morto, dead (man) (*and adj.*).

a mosca, fly, § 26*c*.

o mosteiro, monastery.

mostrar, to show.

mover, to move.

o movimento, movement.

a mucama, female house servant.

mudar, to change, alter.

mui, very.

muito, *adj., adv.*, many, much,
very, § 53, 135*e*.

a mulher, woman.

a mulherona, large woman, § 34.

a multidão, multitude.

MULTIPLICATION, § 62.

o mundo, world.

o murmurio, purling.

a musa, muse.

o musgo, moss.

a musica, music.

o musulmano, Mussulman.

o myope, near-sighted person.

mysterioso, mysterious.

N

na, nas, in the, § 15*c*.

a nação, nation.

nacional, national.

nada, nothing, § 136.
namorado, enamored.
não, not, no, § 135*g*.
o narigão, big nose, § 35.
o nariz, nose.
NASAL SOUNDS, § 4.
nascente, dawning.
nascer, to be born, rise (*sun*).
natural, natural.
a naturcza, nature.
a náu, ship.
a navegação, navigation.
navegar, to navigate, sail.
o navio, ship.
necessariamente, necessarily.
necessario, necessary.
NEGATION, § 100*e*, 136, 137.
o negociante, merchant.
o negocio, business, affair.
o negro, black, negro (*and adj.*).
nem, neither, nor, § 136.
nenhum, no, neither, § 18, 100*d*, 101.
o neto, grandson.
ninguem, no one, § 100.
o ninho, nest.
a nitidez, nicety, neatness.
o nivel, level.
no, **nos**, in the, § 15*c*, 88.
nobre, noble.
a noite, night; **de noite**, by night, § 134.
a noiva, bride.
o nomade, wanderer; *adj.*, wandering.
o nome, name.
nomear, to appoint.
nono, ninth.
a nora, daughter-in-law.

o norte, north.
o norte-americano, *adj.*, North American.
nós, we, § 65, 67.
nosso, our, § 76.
notavel, noteworthy, § 44. II, 143.
as noticias, news.
notorio, evident, manifest.
NOUNS, § 19.
NOUNS OF OPPOSITE SEX, § 28.
NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES, SYNTAX, § 47-53.
nove, nine.
o novembro, November.
a novidade, novelty, news.
novinho, quite new, § 46.
novo, new.
num, **numa**, **nuns**, in a, etc., § 18.
NUMERALS, § 17 note, 55, 63.
o numero, number.
numeroso, numerous.
nunca, never.

O

o, **a**, that, § 87.
o, **a**, **os**, **as**, him, her, it, them, *pro.*, § 65.
o, **a**, **os**, **as**, *art.*, the, § 14, 15, 16.
OBJECTS OF VERBS, § 123.
a obra, work, deed.
a obrigação, obligation.
obrigado, obliged.
obrigar, to oblige.
obrigatorio, obligatory.
obsequioso, obsequious, obliging.
a ocasião, occasion.

ocasionar, to cause, occasion.

o occidente, west.

o oceano, ocean.

o odio, hate, hatred.

o oeste, west.

a offensa, offense.

offerecer, to offer.

o officio, trade, office.

oito, eight.

olhar, to look, § 122*h*.

o olho, eye.

olvidar, to forget.

a omissão, omission.

a onça, panther, § 26*c*; ounce
(*weight*).

a onda, wave.

onde, where.

onze, eleven.

a opinião, opinion.

a opressão, oppression.

a opulencia, wealth.

opulento, opulent, rich.

ora, now, nevertheless.

o orador, orator.

orar, to pray, make a speech.

a ordem, order.

ordenar, to direct.

ORDINALS, § 59.

ordinariamente, ordinarily.

ordinario, commonplace.

o orfão, *or* **orphão**, orphan, p. 9.

oriental, oriental, eastern.

o oriente, orient, east.

original, original.

ORTHOGRAPHY, § 13.

a ortiga, thistle.

o osso, bone.

ou, *or*, § 145*b*.

ouço, *see* **ouvir**, p. 87.

o ouro, gold.

o outeiro, hill.

outrem, another, § 89.

outro, other, § 89, 90, 91.

o outubro, October.

ouvir, to hear, § 113, 124*b*.

o ovo, egg.

P

a paciencia, patience.

padecer, to suffer, endure.

o padre, priest.

pagar, to pay.

o pagem, page (*boy*).

a pagina, page (*of book*).

o pai, father; *pl.*, parents.

pais, *see* **paiz**.

a paixão, passion.

o paiz, country.

a palavra, word.

a palha, straw.

o palitô, coat.

a palmeira, palm tree.

o palmito, small palm.

a palpebra, eyelid.

o pampa,¹ plain.

a pancada, blow, beating, dash
(*of rain*).

o panno, cloth.

o pão, bread, loaf.

o papa, pope.

¹ This word is feminine in Argentine Spanish from which it is introduced. In Rio Grande do Sul, where it is likewise used, it is masculine.

- o papagaio, parrot.
 o papel, paper, roll, § 20. 5.
 o par, par, pair.
 para, for, to, § 122*h*, 135*n*, 141*r*.
 pardo, gray; *but* homem pardo, mulatto.
 parecer, to appear, seem, § 126*c*.
 a parede, wall.
 o parente, kinsman, relative.
 a parte, part, § 23.
 particular, private.
 partir, to depart, start, § 107, pp. 72-74.
 o passado, past.
 o passageiro, passenger.
 passar, to pass.
 o passaro, bird.
 passear, to stroll, walk (*for pleasure*).
 o passo, step.
 paterno, paternal.
 o patio, courtyard, yard.
 a patria, one's country, native land.
 patrio, paternal, national.
 o patriota, patriot.
 o pau, wood, tree.
 a paz, peace.
 o pé, foot.
 o pecego, peach.
 peço, *see* pedir, p. 87.
 o pedaço, piece.
 pedir, to ask for, request, p. 87.
 a pedra, stone.
 o Pedro, Peter.
 pegar, to catch.
 pior, worse, *see* mau, § 44*g*, 45.
 o peito, breast.
 o peixe, fish.
 pela, pelo, by the, § 15*d*, 88, 143.
 a pena, trouble, grief.
 penetrar, to penetrate.
 a península, peninsula.
 a penna, feather, pen.
 o pensamento, thought, idea.
 pensar, to think.
 o pente, comb.
 PENULT ACCENTED, § 9*c*.
 pequeno, small; *sm.*, small boy.
 perceber, to perceive.
 percorrer, to pass through *or* over.
 a perdão, pardon.
 perder, to lose, p. 84.
 perdoar, to pardon.
 a peregrinação, pilgrimage.
 o peregrino, pilgrim, traveler.
 perfeitamente, perfectly.
 perfeito, perfect.
 perguntar, to ask, inquire.
 o perigo, danger.
 PERIPHRASTIC VERB-PHRASES, § 125.
 permittir, to permit.
 a perola, pearl.
 perpetuamente, *adv.*, perpetually.
 perpetuo, perpetual.
 perseguir, to pursue.
 PERSONAL INFINITIVE, § 133.
 a perspectiva, prospect.
 pertencer, to belong.
 perto, near.
 o peru, turkey.
 pesado, heavy.
 pescar, to fish.
 o pescoco, neck.
 o peso, weight.

pessimismo, worst, § 45.
 a pessoa, person.
 a petição, petition.
 phantástico, *see* fantástico.
 a farmácia, pharmacy.
 philosophal, pedra philosophal,
 philosopher's stone.
 a philosophia, philosophy.
 o philosopho, philosopher.
 PHONETIC SPELLING, § 13.
 a phrase, *see* frase.
 a picada, path.
 a pimenta, pepper.
 pinchar, to blow up, dismount.
 o pinheiro, pine tree.
 pintar, to paint, § 124c.
 o pinto, chick.
 o pintor, painter.
 o pires, saucer, § 20b.
 pisar, *or* pizar, to tread, grind.
 a piscina, baptismal font.
 a planície, plain.
 a planta, plant.
 plantar, to plant.
 pleno, full.
 PLURAL ADJECTIVES, § 40.
 PLURALS, § 20.
 o pó, dust, powder.
 pobre, poor.
 a pobreza, poverty.
 poder, to be able, may, can,
 § 112, p. 84.
 o poder, power.
 o poderio, power.
 poderoso, powerful.
 o poema, poem.
 o poeta, poet.
 pois, why, then; pois não, cer-
 tainly.

poisar, to rest, repose, alight,
 perch; stay all night.
 político, political.
 ponho, *see* por, p. 84.
 a ponta, point, end.
 a ponte, bridge.
 o ponto, point, place.
 a população, population.
 por, by, for, § 135a, o, 143.
 pôr, to put, place, § 112, p. 84.
 o porco, hog, pork.
 porem, but.
 porque, why, § 138.
 a porta, door.
 portanto, consequently.
 o porto, port.
 português, *adj.*, Portuguese; *sm.*,
 Portuguese language.
 positivo, positive.
 possível, possible.
 posso, *see* poder, p. 84.
 possuir, to possess.
 postigo, false, not natural.
 posto, *see* pôr, § 100f, p. 85.
 pouco, few, § 53.
 pousar, *see* poisar.
 o povo, people.
 a povoação, village, settlement.
 povoar, to people, p. 112 note.
 a praça, square; assentar praça,
 enlist.
 o prado, meadow, green field.
 o prata, silver.
 o prato, plate.
 o prazer, pleasure.
 prazer, to please, *impersonal*,
 see § 112, p. 85.
 preceder, to precede, § 124c.
 precioso, precious.

precipitar, to precipitate.
 precisar, to need, be necessary,
 § 122e.
 preciso, necessary.
 o **pregão**, proclamation.
 pregar, to nail.
 a **preguiça**, laziness.
 preguiçoso, lazy.
 o **premio**, reward.
 prender, to seize, capture.
 preocupar, to preoccupy.
PREPOSITIONAL IDIOMS,
 § 144.
PREPOSITIONS, 139.
 o **presente**, present (*and adj.*).
 prestar, to lend; **não presta para**
 nada, it is of no use.
 pretender, to expect, aim at, de-
 sign, intend.
 o **preto**, black; negro.
 prever, to foresee.
 primeiro, first.
 o **primor**, beauty, perfection.
 a **princeza**, princess.
 o **príncipe**, prince.
 principiar, to begin, § 123d.
 a **privação**, privation.
 a **proa**, prow.
 a **probidade**, uprightness.
 o **problema**, problem.
PROCLITICS, § 72a.
 procurar, to seek, search for.
 produzir, to produce, yield, § 110b.
 o **professor**, (male) teacher.
 a **professora**, (female) teacher.
 profundo, deep, profound.
PROGRESSIVE PHRASES,
 § 123d.
 o **progresso**, progress.

promover, to encourage, pro-
 mote.
 prompto, *see* pronto.
PRONOUNS, DEMONSTRATIVE, § 84.
PRONOUNS, DETERMINATIVE, § 89.
PRONOUNS, INDEFINITE,
 § 100.
PRONOUNS, INTERROGATIVE, § 95.
PRONOUNS, PERSONAL, § 65.
PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE,
 § 76-83.
PRONOUNS, RELATIVE, § 96.
 pronto, ready.
 proposito, on purpose, § 144.
 a **propriedade**, property.
 proprio, proper, own, itself,
 § 39b, 139a.
 proseguir, to go on, continue.
 proteger, to protect.
 prospero, prosperous.
 prouve, *see* prazer, p. 85.
 a **providencia**, providence.
 a **provincia**, province.
 proximo, near.
 a **prudencia**, prudence.
 prudente, prudent.
 publico, public.
 pugnar, to fight, contend.
 punir, to punish.
 puro, pure.
 pus, *see* pôr, p. 84.

Q

a **quadra**, season.
 o **quadro**, picture, square.
 quadruplo, quadruple.

quaes, *see qual*.

qual, which, § 93, 95, 96, 97, 98.

a qualidade, quality.

qualquer, either, whichever.

quando, when; **quando muito**, at most.

a quantidade, quantity.

QUANTITY, § 10.

quanto, how much, § 100*g*; **em quanto**, while, § 100*i*.

quão, how.

quarenta, forty.

a quarta-feira, Wednesday.

o quarto, room.

quasi, almost.

quatorze, fourteen.

quatro, four, § 55.

que, how, § 134*f*.

que, than, § 145.

que, what, who, which, § 95, 96, 97, 102*a*, *b*.

quebrar, to break.

o queijo, cheese.

queimar, to burn.

queixar, to complain, § 126*b*.

quem, who, § 95, 96, 98.

quemquer, anybody, whoever, § 100*a*.

querer, to wish, want, § 112, *p*. 85, § 122*b*.

querido, dear, beloved.

a questão, question.

quição, who knows, perhaps, § 134*b*.

quieto, quiet.

a quinta-feira, Thursday.

quinze, fifteen.

quiz, *see querer*, *p*. 85.

R

a rã, *see ran*.

a raça, race.

a rainha, queen.

a raiva, rage.

o ramo, branch.

a ran, frog, § 26*c*.

a rapariga, girl.

o rapaz, boy, fellow.

rapidamente, rapidly.

raro, rare.

rasgar, to tear.

o rato, rat.

a razão, reason.

real, royal; *sm.*, real, § 20. 4.

realisar, to realize.

realmente, really, genuinely, indeed.

o recado, word, errand, order.

recear, to apprehend, fear.

receber, to receive.

o recém-chegado, newcomer.

a recompensa, reward.

o reconhecimento, gratitude.

a rede, net, hammock.

a redea, rein.

redímo, *see remir*, *p*. 87.

redor, around, § 144.

reduzir, to reduce.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS, § 67.

REFLEXIVE VERBS, § 126.

o reflexo, reflex.

o refolho, fold.

reforçar, to grow strong.

a reforma, reform.

regalar, to feast, entertain.

regar, to irrigate, wet.

reger, to rule, govern, guide.

a região, region.

o regimento, rule.

regressar, to return.

REGULAR VERBS, § 101, 106,
108.

a reabilitação, rehabilitation.

o rei, king.

o reinado, reign.

o reino, kingdom.

a relação, relation; court.

RELATED NOUNS, § 28-29.

RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE,
§ 43.

o relatorio, report.

a reliquia, relic.

o relógio, watch, clock.

o remédio, remedy.

a reminiscencia, reminiscence.

remir, to redeem, p. 87.

a remissão, pardon.

o remorso, remorse.

renovar, to renew.

repartir, to divide.

repetição, repetition.

repetir, to repeat.

repousar, to rest, repose.

reprender, to reprehend.

requerer, to request, § 112.

o requinte, climax, height.

a resina, resin.

a resistencia, resistance.

resistir, to resist.

o respeito, respect.

respirar, to breathe, blow gently.

responder, to reply, respond.

responsavel, responsible, § 143.

restar, to rest, remain.

resumir, to resume.

retirar, to retire, withdraw.

o retiro, retreat.

retribuir, to reward.

reunir, to rejoin, unite.

a reverencia, reverence.

reverendo, reverend.

a revista, review.

a revolução, revolution.

o ribeirão, gulch.

o ribeiro, brook, creek.

rico, rich, § 44a.

o rio, river.

a riqueza, riches, wealth.

rir, to laugh, § 113, p. 87.

robusto, robust.

a roca, rock.

a rocha, rock.

a roda, wheel; **a roda de**, § 144.

rodar, to roll.

rogar, to ask.

a romaria, pilgrimage.

a rosa, rose.

o rosto, face.

roubar, to rob, steal.

a roupa, clothing.

a rua, street.

o rubi, ruby.

a rudeza, rudeness.

ruim, bad.

o rumo, direction, bearing.

rural, rural.

S

S. = São, Santo, *q. v.*

o sabbado, Saturday.

a sabedoria, wisdom.

saber, to know, § 112, p. 85.

o sabiá, robin.

o sabio, wise man; *adj.*, wise.

o sacrificio, sacrifice.

a sacristia, sacristy, vestry.
 sagrado, sacred.
 sahir, to go out, § 110, p. 82.
 o sal, salt.
 a sala, hall, large room.
 saldar, to close, balance (*accounts*).
 salgar, to salt.
 saltar, to jump.
 salutar, salutary.
 sam, *see* são, § 13a.
 santificado, *pp.*, sanctified.
 o sangue, blood.
 sanguinoso, bloody.
 a santidade, holiness.
 santo, *or* sancto, holy, saint, § 51.
 são, saint; sound, § 41b, p. 116
 note.
 são, *see* ser, § 109, p. 79.
 o sapato, shoe.
 a sapiencia, wisdom.
 satisfeito, satisfied.
 a saudade, longing.
 saudoso, longing, yearning.
 a sciencia, science.
 scismar, to be apprehensive *or*
 pensive.
 se, *pro.*, § 65, 67, 74.
 sê, *see* ser, p. 79.
 a secca, drought.
 secco, dry, § 23.
 secreto, secret.
 o seculo, century.
 a seda, silk.
 a sêde, thirst; a sede, seat.
 seguir, to follow, § 108g, 124c;
 seguir viagem, go on.
 a segunda-feira, Monday.
 segundo, second.

a segurança, safety, security.
 sei, *see* saber, p. 85.
 o seio, bosom.
 seis, six.
 seja, *see* ser, § 102, 109.
 o sello, (postage) stamp, seal.
 a selva, woods.
 o selvagem, savage.
 sem, without.
 a semana, week.
 semear, to sow, plant.
 semelhante, such, similar.
 sempre, always.
 o senador, senator.
 senão, except.
 o senhor, gentleman, sir, mister;
 you, § 66.
 a senhora, lady, madam, Mrs.,
 § 66, 66a, 135g.
 a senhoria, lordship, § 66.
 o senhorio, domain; owner of a
 property.
 sensato, sensible.
 sentar, to seat.
 o sentido, sense, meaning.
 sentir, to feel, § 124a.
 o sepulchro, sepulcher.
 a sepultura, burial.
 ser, to be, § 109, p. 79, § 124a.
 sereno, serene; *sm.*, dew.
 serio, serious.
 a serra, mountain range.
 o sertão, interior, backwoods.
 o serviço, service.
 servir, to serve, § 108g.
 o servo, servant.
 sete, seven.
 o setembro, September.
 setimo, seventh, § 59b.

seu, his, her, your, § 76.
o sexo, sex.
a sexta-feira, Friday.
sexto, sixth.
si, if, whether.
si, *pro.*, § 67, 74.
sido, *see ser*, § 109, p. 81.
o signal, sign.
o silencio, silence.
sim, yes, § 135f, g.
SIMILAR WORDS, § 148.
simples, single, simple, § 51.
singular, singular.
sinto, *see sentir*.
situado, *pp.*, situated.
SLANG, § 7.
só, somente, only.
sob, below, § 144.
sobre, over, on, about.
a sobremesa, dessert.
a sobriedade, sobriety.
o sofá, sofa.
soffrer, to suffer.
o soffrimento, suffering.
o sol, sun.
a sola, sole (*leather*).
o soldado, soldier.
soletrar, to spell.
o solo, soil.
soltar, to loose.
a solução, solution.
a sombra, shade, shadow.
o somno, sleep.
sonhar, to dream.
o sonho, dream.
o sopro, breath.
o sorriso, smile.
a sorte, lot, fate, manner.
o sorvedouro, gulf, vortex.

sosinho, quite alone.
sou, *see ser*, p. 79.
soube, *see saber*, p. 85.
SPECIAL USES OF VERBS,
 § 124.
sua, his, her, its, § 76.
suavamente, softly.
subir, to climb, § 122i.
SUBJECTS OF VERBS,
 § 120, p. 91.
subjugar, to overcome.
SUBJUNCTIVE, p. 74, § 127,
 128, pp. 100, 101.
sublime, sublime.
o successo, result, outcome,
 success.
o sudario, shroud.
SUFFIXES, § 32, 33.
a sugestão, suggestion.
a Suissa, Switzerland.
sujeitar, to subject.
sujo, dirty, soiled.
o sul, south.
sumir, to disappear.
superior, higher, § 44g, 45.
superno, excellent (*old form of*
supremo).
a superstição, superstition.
o supplicante, petitioner.
suppor, to suppose, § 125c.
supremo, final, supreme.
surdo, deaf.
o surdo-mudo, deaf-mute.
suscitar, to raise up, rouse up.
a suspeita, suspicion.
o suspiro, sigh.
o sussurro, murmur.
sustentar, to sustain.
a syllaba, syllable.

SYLLABICATION, § 11.

o symptoma, symptom.

a synagoga, synagogue.

SYNCRETIC FORMS, § 13b.

T

a taboa, board.

taciturno, silent, taciturn.

tal, such, § 93, 94.

o talento, talent.

a talhada, slice.

o talião, retribution, reprisal.

talvez, perhaps, § 129, p. 101.

tamanho, so large, so great.

tambem, also, § 134b.

tanto, as much, as many, § 89,

100f, g.

tão, so.

tarde, late.

te, thee, § 65b, 67.

a telha, tile.

tem, *see ter*, p. 79.

o temor, fear, dread.

o tempero, seasoning (*of food*).

o templo, temple.

o tempo, time, weather.

o temporal, storm.

tenho, *see ter*, p. 79.

tenro, tender.

a tentação, temptation.

ter, to have, § 109a, d, o, p. 79,
§ 126a.

a terça-feira, Tuesday.

o terceiro, third.

o terço, third, § 61.

a terra, earth.

o terreno, land, ground.

terrível, terrible.

teu, *pro.*, thy, § 76.

o thesouro, treasure.

THIRD PERSON, § 66.

ti, to thee, § 65, 67.

a tia, aunt.

tido, *see ter*, p. 79.

o-tigre, tiger, § 26b.

o tijolo, brick.

a tinta, ink.

o tio, uncle.

tirar, to take off, out *or* away.

o tiro, shot.

o título, title.

tive, *see ter*, p. 79.

tocar, to touch.

todo, all, § 100h; **de todo**, entirely,
§ 144.

o tolo, fool.

tomar, to take.

TONE ACCENT, § 9.

torcer, to twist.

o tormento, torture.

tornar, to return. *Before another verb with a it means to repeat: tornei a visitar, 'I visited again.'*

torpe, base, vile.

a torrente, torrent.

torto, twisted, wrong, crooked,
§ 134a.

tortuoso, crooked.

o trabalhador, workman.

trabalhar, to work.

o trabalho, work, labor. .

trabalhoso, laborious.

a traça, moth-worm.

traduzir, to translate.

trago, *see trazer*, p. 86.

tratar, to treat of, care for.

trazer, to fetch, bring, § 112, p. 86.

o trem, train.
 tremulo, trembling.
 tres, three.
 as trevas, darkness, § 21.
 treze, thirteen.
 a tribu, tribe.
 o tributo, tribute.
 a trilha, track.
 o trilho, rail (*of railway*).
 trinta, thirty.
 triplado, } triple, § 62b.
 triplo, }
 triste, sad.
 a tristeza, sadness.
 o troco, change, exchange.
 a trombeta, trumpet.
 o tronco, trunk (*of tree*).
 trouxe, *see* trazer, p. 86.
 o trovador, troubadour.
 trovejar, to thunder.
 tu, thou, § 65.
 tua, thy, § 76.
 tudo, all, § 100c.
 a tumba, hearse.
 o tumulo, tomb.
 tupi, Indian (Brazilian).
 a turba, rabble.
 o turco, Turk.

U

ultimo, last.
 o ultramar, over seas, beyond
 the seas.
 um, } one, a, § 17, 91.
 uma, }
 ungir, to anoint.
 unico, only, single.
 unir, to unite.
 o universo, universe.

UNRELATED NOUNS, § 28c,
 31.

uns, some, § 17, 100a.
 usar, to use.
 a usina, factory.
 o uso, use.
 util, useful.

V

va, *see* ir, p. 87.
 a vacca, cow.
 vadiar, to idle.
 vae, *see* ir, p. 87.
 o vagar, leisure; de vagar, slowly.
 a vaidade, vanity.
 valente, strong.
 valer, to be worth, p. 86.
 valeroso, brave, valorous.
 valho, *see* valer, p. 86.
 a vantagem, advantage.
 vão, vain, § 41b.
 vão, *see* ir, p. 87.
 o vapor, steam, steamer.
 a varanda, veranda.
 VARIABLE MEANINGS, § 23.
 VARIABLE PARTICIPLES,
 § 114, p. 88.
 a varzea, plain.
 vasto, vast.
 o veado, deer.
 a vegetação, vegetation
 a veiga, meadow.
 vejo, *see* ver, § 112, p. 86.
 a vela, sail.
 a velhice, old age.
 velho, old; *sm.*, old man.
 vem, *see* vir, § 113, p. 88.
 vencedor, victorious, conquer-
 ing.

vencer, to conquer, vanquish.
vender, to sell.
o venerador, venerator.
veneravel, venerable.
venho, *see* **vir**, § 113, p. 88.
o vento, wind.
a ventura, good fortune, luck.
ver, to see, § 112, p. 86.
VERBS, § 103.
VERBS, AUXILIARY, § 109.
VERBS, IRREGULAR, § 110.
VERBS, MODEL, § 107.
VERBS, REGULAR, § 106.
a verdade, truth.
verdadeiramente, truly.
verdadeiro, true, genuine, real.
verde, green.
a vergonha, shame.
vermelho, red.
a versão, version.
o verso, verse.
o vestigio, trace.
vestir, to put on, dress, § 122*i*, 124*c*.
a vez, time, § 62.
vi, *see* **ver**, p. 86.
a via, way.
a viagem, voyage, trip.
viajar, to travel.
viçar, to grow rank.
viciar, to demoralize, vitiate.
o vicio, vice.
vicioso, vicious.
a victima, victim.
a victoria, victory.
a vida, life.
vil, vile, base, bad.
a villa, town, city.

vim, *see* **vir**, p. 88.
o vinho, wine.
vinte, twenty.
a vintena, score.
violento, violent.
vir, to come, § 109*n*, p. 88, § 122*h*.
a virgem, virgin.
a virtude, virtue.
visitar, to visit.
a vista, view, sight, § 134*a*.
visto, *pp. of* **ver**, p. 86, § 145.
o vituperio, disgrace, shame.
a viuva, widow.
viver, to live, exist.
vivo, alive.
a vizinhança, neighborhood.
o vizinho, neighbor.
o vocabulo, word.
a vocação, vocation.
você, you, § 66, 147.
a vogal, vowel.
volcão, *see* **vulcão**.
voltar, to return, turn to.
o volume, volume.
a vontade, will, wish, desire.
vos, ye, you, § 65, 66*d*, 67.
vosso, your, § 76.
votar, to vote, devote, vow.
vou, *see* **ir**, p. 87.
VOWELS, § 2.
a voz, voice.
o vulcão, volcano.
vulgar, popular, well known.

Z

o zelo, zeal, *pl.*, § 23.
a zona, zone, region.

ENGLISH-PORTUGUESE VOCABULARY

A

aboard, a bordo; **go aboard**, embarcar.
about: talk about, de; discourse about, sobre; look about, em roda; think about, em; walk about the streets, passear pelas ruas.
accident, o disastre.
account, a conta.
acquainted with, conhecer.
advice, o conselho.
afterwards, depois.
again, mais. outra vez.
ago, a year ago, ha um anno, § 64.
agreeable, agradavel.
all, todo -a, § 144.
always, sempre.
American, americano.
and, e.
animal, o animal.
another, outro.
around, em roda.
arrange, arranjar, concluir, combinar.
arrest, prender.
arrive, chegar.
ask, pedir, rogar, perguntar, convidar (*see Portuguese definitions*).
at, a, § 141.

awake, acordar.

away, embora, fora; **far away**, longe.

B

back (come), voltar.
bad, mau, § 41g.
bar, a barra (*of stream*).
baroness, a baroneza.
bath, o banho.
be, estar, § 109, p. 79, § 125b; ser, § 109, p. 79, § 156b.
beautiful, bonito, bello.
before, antes (*in time*); **adiante** (*in space*).
begin, principiar.
believe, acreditar.
best, o melhor, § 45.
better, melhor, § 45.
big, grande.
black, preto.
blind, cego.
blow, soprar, ventar, fazer vento.
book, o livro.
boot, a bota, a botina.
both, ambos, os dois, um e outro, § 90a.
box, a caixa, o caixão, p. 130 note.
boy, o menino.
Brazilian, brasileiro *or* brasileiro.
bread, o pão.

breakfast, o almoço.
bring, trazer.
brother, o irmão.
business, o negocio.
busy, occupado.
but, mas, porem, apenas.
buy, comprar.

C

can, poder, p. 84.
candle, a vela.
capital, o, a capital, § 31.
case, o caso.
cat, o gato.
certainty, a certeza.
chair, a cadeira.
change, mudar, trocar,
cheap, barato.
city, a cidade.
close, fechar, tapar.
coffee, o café.
cold, frio.
come, vir, p. 88, § 122h.
consul, o cônsul.
contented, contente.
cost, custar.
country, o paiz.
cover, cobrir.
cow, a vacca.
crooked, torto.
curate, o cura.
custom, o costume.

D

dark, escuro.
daughter, a filha.
dear, caro.
decide, decidir.

deck (on deck), a ponte.
deep, profundo.
dependent, dependente.
deputy, o deputado.
die, morrer.
different, diferente.
difficult, difficil.
difficulty, a difficuldade.
dining-room, a sala de jan-
tar.
dinner, o jantar.
direction, o rumo.
do, fazer, § 112, 124c.
docile, docil.
dog, o cachorro, o cão.
door, a porta.
doubt, a duvida.
dress, vestir.
drop, a gota.
drown, afogar.
duck, o pato.

E

each, cada, cada um, § 100f.
easy, facil.
egg, o ovo.
either, qualquer, § 100a; either
... or, ou ... ou, § 145b.
elect, eleger.
else, outro.
embark, embarcar.
employment, o emprego.
English, inglez.
enough, bastante; it is enough,
basta.
enter, entrar.
esteem, estimar.
everything, tudo, § 100c.
extinct, extincto.

F

fashion, a moda.
 father, o pai.
 feather, a penna.
 federal, federal.
 fellow, o rapaz, companheiro.
 fetch, trazer.
 fever, a febre.
 field, o campo, a roça.
 fish, o peixe.
 fish hook, o anzol.
 flower, a flor.
 follow, seguir.
 foot, o pé.
 fork, o garfo.
 fortune, a fortuna.
 four, quatro, § 59.
 friend, o amigo.
 fruit, a fruta, § 29.
 fry, frigar, § 115.

G

get (there), chegar.
 girl, a menina, a rapariga, a moça.
 give, dar.
 glass, o copo.
 go, ir, § 109g, 113, 125d.
 good, bom, boa, § 41g, 45.
 great, grande.

H

half, a metade, meio.
 handsome, bonito, bello.
 hard, difficil, duro.
 hat, o chapeo.
 have, ter, § 109, p. 79; haver, § 109a, p. 79.

health, a saude.
 help, o remedio.
 hen, a gallinha.
 her, ella, § 65; seu, § 76.
 here, aqui, cá, § 135a, b.
 hill, o morro.
 his, seu, sua, etc., § 76.
 home, a casa, o domicilio.
 hope, esperar.
 horse, o cavallo.
 hot, (to be), frazer calor, § 121.
 hour, a hora.
 house, a casa.
 how, como.
 how much, quanto, § 100f, g.
 hunger, a fome.
 hungry, com fome, § 122d.

I

I, eu, § 65, 66c.
 if, si.
 immediately, logo, já.
 important, importante.
 impress, impressionar.
 in, em, no, na, § 15c, 122g, 134a, 137.
 invite, convidar.
 it, elle, ella, § 65.

J

John, João.
 just now, § 135g.

K

kill, matar.
 knife, a faca; penknife, o canivete.
 knock, batter.
 know, saber, p. 85; conhecer (be acquainted with).

L

lady, a senhora.
land, o paiz, a terra.
lard, a banha.
large, grande.
law, a lei.
lazy, preguiçoso.
leave, deixar, sahir, partir, afastar-se.
lens, a lente.
lesson, a lição.
letter, a carta, a letra.
light, ascender.
like, gostar.
likely to, capaz de.
Lisbon, Lisboa.
little, pequeno; pouco, § 100f.
live (*dwel*), morar.
loaf (*of bread*), o pão.
long, comprido.
lose, perder.
loud, alto, forte.
love, amar.
low, baixo.

M

make, fazer.
man, o homem.
match, o fosforo.
may, poder, p. 84.
me, me, mim, § 65, 67.
meat, a carne.
mend, concertar.
merchant, o negociante.
mine, *pro.*, meu, § 76.
mine, a mina.
minute, o minuto.
moment, o momento.
money, o dinheiro.

more, mais, § 42, 44b, f, 45.
morning, a manhã.
most, o mais.
mother, a mãe.
mountain, a serra, a montanha.
much, muito.
mud, a lama.
my, meu, minha, etc., § 76.

N

napkin, o guardanapo.
nation, a nação.
near, perto.
necessary, preciso, necessario.
neighbor, o vizinho.
neither . . . **nor**, nem um nem outro, § 136, 145c.
never, nunca.
new, novo.
next, proximo; **next day**, dia seguinte.
night, a noite.
no, não, § 135g.
nobody, ninguém.
noise, o barulho.
no matter, não faz mal, não importa.
no one, ninguém, § 100.
nor, nem, § 136, 145c.
not, não, § 135g; nem, § 136.
notable, notavel.
nothing, nada.
now, agora.
nowadays, hoje em dia, § 134a.

O

obliged, obrigado.
occasion, a occasião.
o'clock, horas, § 64.

of, de, § 122*e*, *f*, 124*c*, 134, 139, 144.

officer, o official.

old, velho, antigo.

on, sobre, em, no, na, § 122*g*, 134*a*.

one, um, uma, § 55.

opinion, a opinião.

oppress, opprimir.

or, ou.

order, a ordem.

order (*v.*), mandar, mandar fazer, dirigir.

other, outro.

our, nosso, § 76.

outside, fora.

own, proprio.

owner, o dono, o proprietario, o senhorio.

ox, o boi.

P

paper, o papel.

parents, os pais, § 23.

pass, passar.

pay, pagar.

pen, a penna.

pencil, o lapis.

people, o povo.

perhaps, talvez.

person, a pessoa.

physician, o medico.

piece, o pedaço.

pity, a pena; a lastima.

place, o lugar.

plate, o prato.

please, agradar, tenha a bondade (*have the kindness to*).

pleased, contente.

poor, pobre, § 51.

poor fellow, poor thing, poor man, coitado -a.

population, a população.

port, o porto.

Portuguese, portuguez.

possible, possivel.

potato, a batata.

prepare, preparar, aprontar.

present, o presente; at present, por ora.

pretty, bonito.

prince, o principe.

print, imprimir, § 117.

promptly, prontamente.

prudent, prudente.

Q

question, perguntar.

quite, bem, § 145; algum tanto, inteiramente.

R

railway, a estrada de ferro.

rain, a chuva, chover (to).

rapidly, depressa.

rat, o rato.

read, ler.

request, pedir.

respect, o respeito.

retire, retirar-se.

return, voltar.

rice, o arroz.

rich, rico.

ridiculous, ridiculo.

river, o rio.

road, a estrada, o caminho.

rose, a rosa.

run away, fugir.

S

satisfactorily, satisfactoriamente.
 say, dizer, § 112.
 seasick, enjoado.
 see, ver, § 112, p. 86.
 sell, vender.
 'sharp, agudo; 'ten o'clock
 'sharp,' ás dez horas em
 ponto.
 shop, a loja.
 short, curto.
 sick, doente.
 since, desde, depois.
 single, um só.
 sir, o senhor, § 66.
 sister, a irmã *or* irman.
 slowly, devagar.
 small, pequeno.
 some, uns, alguns, § 17,
 100a.
 somewhat, um tanto, § 135s.
 son, o filho.
 soon, cedo.
 speak, falar.
 spend, gastar.
 spoon, a colher.
 state, o estado.
 steamer, o vapor.
 still, *conj.*, ainda, todavia, com
 tudo.
 storm, o temporal.
 straw, a palha.
 street, a rua.
 strong, forte.
 such, tal, § 89, 93.
 suit, convir, § 121.
 sun, o sol.
 surround, cercar, rodear.

T

table, a mesa.
 take, tomar, levar.
 take away, tirar.
 talk, falar, § 107.
 tall, alto.
 tea, o chá.
 terrible, terrível.
 than, que, de, § 145a.
 that, aquelle -a, § 84, 87.
 the, a, o, as, os, § 14, 15, 16.
 then, então, naquelle tempo.
 there, ahi, ali, lá, acolá,
 § 135c, d, r.
 thing, a cousa.
 this, este, esse, § 84, 86.
 tiger, o tigre, a onça.
 tile, a telha.
 time, o tempo; what time is it?
 see § 64; a vez, § 62.
 to, a, § 123a, b, 124, 141.
 to-day, hoje.
 to-morrow, amanhã.
 track, a linha, o trilho.
 travel, viajar.
 trip, a viagem.
 twice, duas vezes.
 two, dois, duos, § 55.

U

ugly, feio.
 under, em baixo.

V

valley, o valle.
 venerable, veneravel.
 very, mui, muito, § 44d, 135a.

village, a aldeia, a povoação, o arraial, a villa.
visit, visitar.
volcano, o vulcão.

W

waken, acordar.
walk, passeiar, andar.
walk, o passeio.
want, querer, desejar.
water, a agua.
we, nos, § 65, 67, 72.
week, a semana.
well, bem, § 134*h*.
what, que, o que, § 95-97, 102*a, b*;
 qual, § 95, 96, 98.
when, quando.
whence, donde.
where, onde.
whether, si.
which, qual, § 95-98.
while, em quanto; **in a little**
 while, d'aqui a pouco.
white, branco.
who, quem, § 96.
whoever, quem quer, § 102.

wife, a mulher, a esposa.
window, a janella.
wine, o vinho.
with, com.
wolf, o lobo.
woman, a mulher.
woods, o mato.
work, trabalhar.
world, o mundo.
worse, peor, § 44*g*, 45.
worth, valer, p. 86.
worthy, digno.
write, escrever, § 116.

Y

year, o anno.
yellow, amarello.
yes, sim, § 135*f, g, h*.
yesterday, hontem.
you, vos, § 65, 67, 72.
young, novo.
young man, o moço.
young woman, a moça, a don-
 zella.
your, vosso, seu, § 76.



